

MUSIC - UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 05793 6783



MAY AND MAY
5 HOTHAM ROAD
LONDON, SW15 1QN

Music and
Music Literature





THE STORY OF BRITISH MUSIC

THE STORY
OF
BRITISH MUSIC

(FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE
TUDOR PERIOD)

BY
FREDERICK J. CROWEST

AUTHOR OF
'THE GREAT TONE POETS,' 'MUSICAL ANECDOTES,'
ETC.



LONDON
RICHARD BENTLEY AND SON
Publishers in Ordinary to Her Majesty
1896
[All rights reserved]



ML
285
C76

P R E F A C E.

THIS is an attempt to tell the story of British music. Wide and comprehensive as the scope of English literature undoubtedly is, we have hitherto been without a book dealing specifically with the birth and growth of English music. Histories of music almost rival the planets in number, but they are for the most part singularly unlike the heavenly bodies in the light they throw upon that aspect of the divine art concerning which every Briton would naturally desire information—namely, the history of the music of his own country. I know of no work which deals at all adequately with the rise and progress of the art as found and practised in England, the nearest attempt at anything of the kind being the late Sir Frederick A. Gore Ouseley's brief, and necessary, additions to Naumann's 'History of Music.' Yet the subject of England's music deserves ample treatment.

To remedy such a state of things, I several years back devoted my attention to the present work, the first instalment of which is now given to the public. I have not attempted a learned book, but one which will, I hope, possess interest not alone for

the many thousands of students and workers who are musical, but also for that far larger section of general readers who profess to know nothing of music. My aim throughout has been to tell a connected, simple story, free from technicalities, so that all who will may read and learn something concerning the glorious past, and the excellent present status and promise, of musical England.

I must, I fear, confess that the ground covered by the present volume, while being the most sterile in material and facts, is also—and I am fully sensible of it—the least interesting period over which my narrative will extend. But better things are in store, and the good wine will be kept until the last. My next volume will take us into that genial region, the Elizabethan period, wherein native musical art burst into its fullest glory. Then comes the Victorian era, during which so much has been accomplished for music in this country by our gracious Sovereign and her Royal Consort, the late Prince Albert, as well as by other members of the Royal Family. All this must be told ere our story is complete ; and I shall be glad to receive any suggestions and information from those interested in this national matter which will tend in any way to the better interest or telling of the narrative.

THE AUTHOR.

24, AMPHILL SQUARE,
LONDON, N.W.,
December, 1895.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
INTRODUCTION	- - - -	I
I. EARLY BRITISH AND ROMAN MUSIC	- - - -	11
II. SAXON MUSICAL INFLUENCE	- - - -	37
III. BARDS, BARDISM, AND SCALDS	- - - -	72
IV. AUGUSTINE AND HIS MUSICAL WORK	- - - -	97
V. SAXON MUSICAL ECCLESIASTICS TO THE INVENTION OF NOTATION	- - - -	118
VI. LATE SAXON AND EARLY NORMAN MUSIC	- - - -	158
VII. MINSTRELSY FROM NORMAN TO LANCASTRIAN TIMES	-	195
VIII. FIRST POLYPHONY, OR PART-WRITING : MUSICAL GRAMMAR AND AUTHORSHIP	- - - -	264
IX. SECOND PERIOD ENGLISH SCHOOL TO TUDOR TIMES	-	318
INDEX	- - - -	387

THE
STORY OF BRITISH MUSIC

INTRODUCTION.

BRITAIN's first musical breathings! Dear must such be to all who love Old England; for in these earliest

Pre-historic. artistic symptoms lie the germs of much of that happiness that pervades every home, whether palace or cot, in the land to-day, where cultivated music is a factor in the round of daily life. And what circle is now without its music?

The story of musical England cannot be soon told; nor for a while can it pretend to be a narrative of facts, since so much that we should all like to know has become lost in the mist and haze of the past. It is not until we reach the thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth centuries that we become possessed of data concerning music and musicians which can be positively proved, and therefore depended upon. Even then the information is frequently most scanty. It will be easily understood, consequently, how difficult

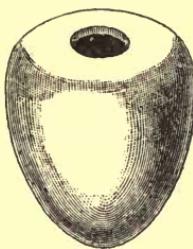
it is to provide a thoroughly connected narrative until that period is reached. The reader should be informed, too, at the outset, that it will be to sacred rather than to secular sources that we must have recourse for much of our story at first. At times he will seem to be reading merely an account of Church music in England ; but he must not be discouraged. It is to the Church that we are bound to go for the first regular and systematic employment of the art in this country. The religious services often kept the art alive when everything relating to secular matters was in a condition of disturbance which must have made men despair. Occasionally we get glimpses of secular art and practice ; but on the whole, it was sacred rather than secular music that rarely waned, and which furnished the backbone of the art in its far-off infancy which we have to trace.

For the first melody and the earliest harmony which sprang from the soil on which the future homesteads of our fair land were to stand, we must look back through the ages to that period when Europe was peopled only here and there, to a time long and long before that when St. Paul is said to have looked into the very eyes of Linus and Claudia, the children of Caractacus, the British chief. Then Albion shared the conditions of other isolated spots in the slowly-waking Western world, when men beat at the doors of Nature with sharp flints. The Stone and Flint Age produced means, no doubt, of

making sounds from objects of stone ; but it is remarkable that scarcely a single article of this kind exists.

The fragment here illustrated was found among some flint implements at Reading, and may have been used as a whistle. It is a small oval stone, not manufactured; but more probably a sponge petrifaction ; and, the centre of the sponge being absent, a clean hole is left which emits a loud whistle on being blown into, as into the hole of a key.

At this earliest stage the music of our country was the carollings of birds, the monotone of bees, the fluttering of the leaves, and the chirpings from the night insects. Sometimes it was the rush, at others the ripple, of waters that have since swollen into our pleasant rivers. Then the groan of the wild ox and the wolf's cry clave the air ; while here and there rose the human voice of gifted savages, vehement with the emotions of the giant frames which emitted it. We can but surmise how such aborigines would proceed—musically. Like all primitive beings, they would clap with the hands, shout and wail, whistle with hands and mouth, imitate the sounds of beasts and birds, construct, and then amuse themselves with instruments of percussion of the coarsest kind, invent a reed or pipe with a blowing hole, turn the cattle-horns into signal trumpets, perchance make

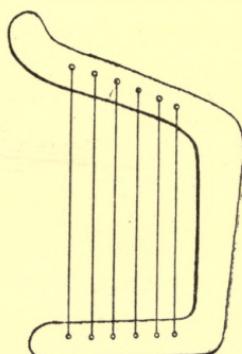


FLINT WHISTLE.

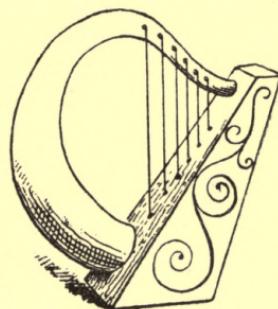
something approaching a drum, flourish a stick of bits of metal, and otherwise satisfy their cravings after varied sounds and many jinglings. For centuries such music rose in early Albion. It seems to have been all swept away in the tremendous deluge which overtook the country before the historic period, when men and animals were drowned out, never to be succeeded here by the like again, in that great convulsion before which beautiful spots like Wells and Glastonbury were being washed by the sea-surf.

With the spreading westwards of the races which were to be the forefathers of the Celt, Teuton, and Cymry, a faint musical clue seems to present itself. These wanderers were from the East, and came pushing in a north-westerly direction, fated to leaven musically, as well as socially, the Western continent and this land of ours. Their home was Persia, India, and Arabia. They might leave their native plains and hills behind them, but the songs of their youth and the lays of their land would cling to them with irresistible force wherever they pitched their camp. These germs of Oriental art drifted into Europe, and no doubt influenced the music of the inhabitants of Albion. The native's drum, the rude pipe, and the coarse vocal soundings which may have been here, commingled with whatever musical elements the Aryan emigrants brought with them. The lyre was an introduction. It was invented ages and ages ago in the art nursery of Central Asia. The Tartars, the

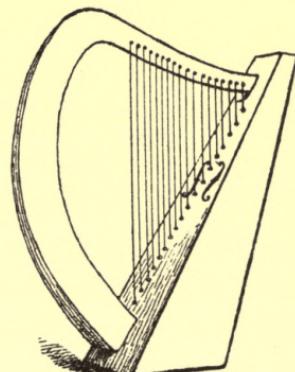
troubadours of the East, brought it westward. In the lapse of years it reached this country, and became an instrument for the ancient Britons, and the parent of subsequent instruments struck by a hammer. Another Eastern-world instrument was the lute—the forerunner of instruments whose strings are plucked by the fingers, which, in its turn, grew into the harp. This also found its way into Britain—when, no one really knows. Bardic traditions say it was taken into Ireland by Heber and Heremon, the first princes of the Milesian race in Ireland, about the year 1000 B.C. The most early specimens of ancient British harps that have been found, of which we give some drawings, were strung with brass, with the exception of some of the extreme upper notes, which were of metal, like pianoforte wires. The number of these strings varied from



MOST ANCIENT FORM OF
IRISH HARP.



THE CRUIT (IRISH).



THE CLAIRSEACH (IRISH).

fifty-four to sixty, but a few cords probably sufficed for the earliest instruments.

Antiquaries and collectors occasionally find a fragment which seems to throw light upon these far-off periods to which we would fain trace our musical genesis; but the evidence is always slender. Iberomusical proofs are scanty indeed. The accompanying sketch represents what would seem to be a Celtic whistle. It is made of bone, and is stored in the Dorset County Museum, near which it was found.



CELTIC WHISTLE.

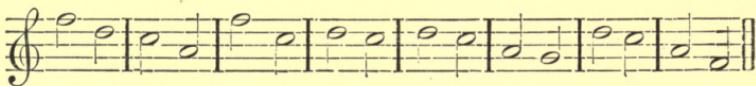
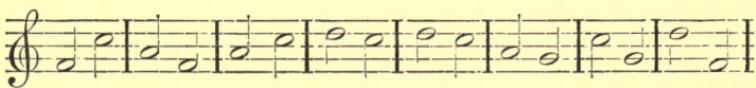
Reaching the Bronze Period, we meet with horns of brass, such as are to be seen in the British Museum and other collections. These horns are of semicircular shape, moulded after the fashion of the horns of oxen and other animals. Covered as Britain was with woods and forests, the goat and ox horn would be plentiful enough. It could be turned into a variety of uses, indoors and out. Thus, there were banquet-horns, horns for the chase (which could be used for both sounding and drinking purposes), and war-horns. These latter gave out the note of alarm, or summoned the tribes together against the common enemy. The animal's horn was undoubtedly among the earliest instrumental possessions of primeval Britain. Its telling tone would render it singularly valuable as a 'call'; and,

doubtless, it was an instrument common to the tribes of our country. The lost huntsman in the forest could indicate his whereabouts by its sound; while it would be serviceable indeed to the chief, erect before his height-fires, rallying his followers around him.

Druids, and Druidism their teaching (a modified form of the Iberian religion which preceded it in Britain), constituted the first national schoolmaster,

The **Druids.** and much that was cultured and elevating had its origin in this source. Caius, the historian, believed that the order originated in Britain as early as 1013 B.C., continuing till 179 A.D. Belonging to it were priests, bards, and ovates, robed in white, blue, and green respectively. Amid the ritual of the Druidical service, plaints and chants—familiar probably to the whole body of assembled worshippers—blended with the sacrificial fires and aromas as these lifted to the sun and moon, or to such gods as Ofydd, Mapon, Camulus, Ludd, and Brigantia, which deities the Britons worshipped. Tradition for the most part pictures the religious assemblies of the Druids, with the chiefs and tribes supporting them, as gatherings of magnitude and rude splendour. The excited women, dressed in black, with long loose hair, and brandishing torches, were a startling feature. We can imagine the vocal outpourings to have been grand and solemn melodies, teeming with intensity and variety of acute intonation

peculiar to the melodies born of the natural ear, and satisfying its requirements, as the British tunes did. If the great storehouse of the past could but reveal its treasures, we might expect these sacrificial songs which our progenitors sang to their 'unknown god' to be Laments, not unlike such plaints as the Maneros (which the Egyptians performed at their funerals), the Linos of the Greeks, or the ancient Chinese melody in praise of the dead, limited to a compass to suit men and women, old



CHINESE TUNE SUNG IN PRAISE OF THE DEAD,

With F, the Chinese patriarch of all tunes, forming the beginning, middle, and end of the melody.

and young alike. Whatever may have been the antiquity of the Druids, it was through them and their bardic orders that the musical continuity of this country was maintained.

That there was a native music here—probably to the extent of being an established system—long before the invasion of Julius Cæsar, is certain. The land itself (Britain), some lovingly say, takes its name from Prydain, son of Aedd Mawr, one of

the most distinguished characters of whom bardic memorials are preserved.

Prydain's son was Dyfnwal, in whose day recognition was made of three primeval bards of Britain. These were Plennyd, Alawn, and Gwron, called, in one copy of the Triads, the three Primitive Institutional bards. Plennyd enjoys the reputation of being bard—*i.e.*, singer or narratory chanter—to King Brutus, who is said to have obtained sovereignty of Britain as far back as 1149 B.C.

Wace, the author of 'Le Brut d'Angleterre,' a metrical account of Brutus, the pretended founder of the British nation, represents Gabet, one of the kings, as the most able musician of his time—one who

‘Every instrument could play,
And in sweetest manner sing,
Chanting forth each kind of lay
To the sound of harp and string.’

The skill of the British monarch as an instrumental performer is set out in the following strain :

‘He to psaltry, viol, rote,
Chorus, harp, and lyre could sing ;
And so sweet was ev'ry note
When he touch'd the trembling string,
That, with love and zeal inflam'd,
All who joined the list'ning throng,
Him with ecstasy proclaim'd
God of minstrels, God of song.’

So must we end this brief review of the remotest period in old Albion's musical life, dating from that

far-off era when lions and tigers, with the wild elephant and rhinoceros, roamed the forests of our now well-trimmed land. The survey has taken us back under the dark shroud of thousands of years in our country's existence, a time covering not only the Neolithic or New Stone Period, but also the still older Stone Age, when Palæolithic humanity, unnamed and unstoried, trod our precious soil. Much, very much, has been effaced in the long past relating to Britain's artistic life ; but, happily, there is still testimony of her great musical position long before the age of books and written documents.

CHAPTER I.

EARLY BRITISH AND ROMAN MUSIC.

The First light thrown upon musical England—British life according to Pytheas—Roman Influence—Idris—The *Crwth*—Helen—British children musically instructed—Social uses for Music—A British musical System—Character of British Music—The Melodies most authentic—Welsh Music allied to the original British—Musical gifts of the Welsh—Music indigenous to Britain—Britain's earliest Sacred Music—Before the Saxon Invasion—Tertullian—St. Alban—Character of First British Ecclesiastical Music—Gildas's references to Dress and Fashions—Baptisms and Confirmations—St. Patrick—British Bishops in Conference at 'Augustin's Oak'—Characteristic British Melodies.

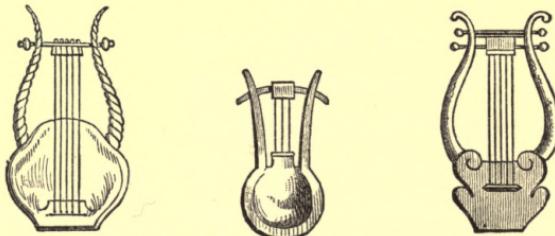
PYTHEAS, the Greek navigator and Marseilles merchant, who was contemporary with Alexander the Great and Aristotle (384-322 B.C.), visited Britain, and throws the first light upon the musical and artistic tendencies of the natives.

Pytheas. They, according to him, were capable of enjoying social pursuits and pleasures of some refinement. Landing in Kent, he saw houses of wood and thatch, and witnessed the method of threshing corn in barns, and the storing thereof afterwards in pits. He met

here a hospitable people—not a foreign settlement, but sons of the soil—whose manners had been polished by contact with visitors from the outer world. At the western extremity of the land he found the Cornish tin-mines, with their shafts and galleries being worked much as they are to-day. The people drank their curmi, a liquor fermented from barley. The horn, Pytheas adds, was a common accompaniment to the person, and in war the onslaughts of the British hosts were preceded by loud cries and the blowings of these horns.

In the year 55-54 B.C., the Roman trumpet-call arrested the ear of the brave Briton, yet, beyond a few references in their literature, the first or subse-

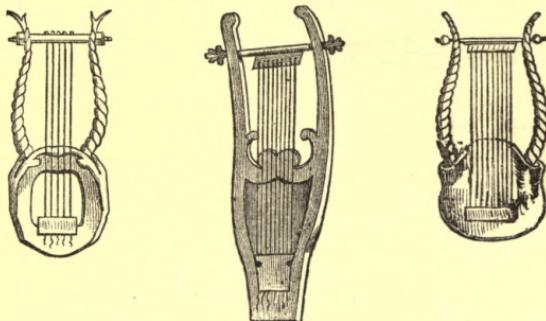
Roman Influence. quent visits of the invaders of Britain scarcely aided music here. Save the harp, lyre, and cithar, the tuba and buccina, the valorous Romans had nought but martial instru-



ROMAN LYRES AND CITHARS.

ments, and no vocal music beyond profane songs; so that, although they came and went for three centuries, they did not seriously influence the music of Britain. The natives refused association with their

conquerors, and every tribe retained its old tastes and customs, musical and otherwise.



ROMAN LYRES AND CITHARS.

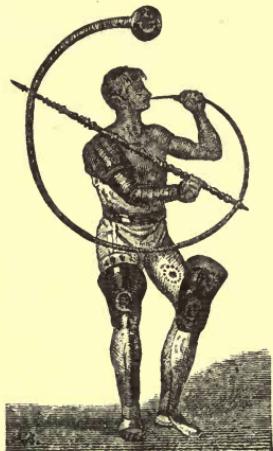
Pending the Roman scourge (54 B.C. to 450 A.D.) the natives, especially those of South Britain, devoted such time as could be spared from the constantly-recurring periods of war to musical exercise. The art, as has been said, retained its old British warmth and sympathetic character, untainted by any influence of the conquerors, and every century is bright with the name of some musician, kingly or lowly-born, whose skill in music exalted him in the estimation of the people. For generations the groves of Britain resounded to the praises of Idris,*



A ROMAN TRUMPETER.

* Idris is, of course, a figure only in Welsh tradition, whose history cannot be traced with certainty. He is supposed to have been at once a giant, a prince, and an astronomer. On the summit of Cader Idris in Merionethshire may be seen his rock-

the most ancient chieftain and lord of the borders of Idris Mountain. His home was the highest peak in Merionethshire, and he boasted a genealogy from Cadwaladr, Meirion, and more.



A ROMAN BUCCINATOR.

The harp, which the Italian poet Venantius Fortunatus* (565 A.D.) wrote was, with the crwth, the instrument of the 'barbarians,' or Britons, is said to have been invented by Idris. It is more probable that he improved some existing instrument, or the cognomen of 'inventor' may have been won

through sheer proficiency as a player. Writing about the year 609 A.D. to Loup, Duke of Champagne, this same author mentions the *crotta*, the Latinized name for the cruth, or crwth :

‘Romanus lyrâ, plaudit tibi, barbarus harpâ
Græchus Achilliaca, *Crotta Brittanus canit.*’

VENANT. FORT., Carm. VIII., lib. vii.

In shape the crwth was an oblong body, with a

hewn chair, and an ancient tradition says that any Welsh bard who should pass the night upon it would be found next morning either dead, mad, or endowed with supernatural poetic inspiration. This tradition forms the subject of a fine poem by Mrs. Hemans ; the gigantic size of the chair is alluded to in Tennyson's 'Geraint and Enid.'

* Bishop of Poictiers.

neck and finger-board, as here illustrated. It had six strings, four over the finger-board and two open

The Crwth. strings beyond it. Consequent upon the flat bridge, the strings when sounded must have given off harmony, since they were not tuned to the same note, but as follows :

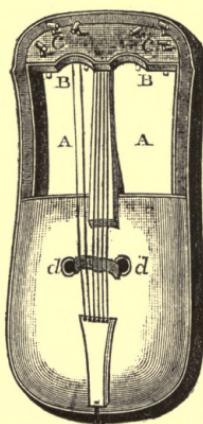


five and six being the open strings.

It is this peculiar construction of the crwth, and the mode of tuning it, which furnishes proof of the early addiction of the Welsh and British to harmony. In any case, this ancient violin is one of the very earliest-known instruments played with a bow.

The word 'crwth' is pronounced in English 'crownth,' and corruptly 'crowd'; a player on the crwth was called a crowther, or crowder, and so also is a common fiddler to this day; and hence, undoubtedly, crowther, or crowder, a common surname.

Butler, with his usual humour, has characterized a common fiddler, and given him



THE CRWTH.

*AA, the apertures for the hand;
BB, the strings conducted under the end-board;
cc, the pegs;
dd, the sound-holes.*

the name of Crowdero, in the following passage of the ' Hudibras ' :*

' I th' head of all this warlike rabble,
Crowdero march'd, expert and able.
Instead of trumpet and of drum,
That makes the warrior's stomach come,
Whose noise whets valour sharp, like beer
By thunder turned to vinegar.'

Of fairer mould was another most skilful in music. She was Helen (250-330 A.D.), the only daughter of Coel Godbebog, King of Britain in the third century. She was esteemed the loveliest woman of her time, and the accounts say that the Britons named her Helen Luyddawe, or Helen with the Great Army, which she led out to Jerusalem, where, tradition says, she found the cross of Christ.

At the call to arms, at the banquet board, and at the orgies, the accompaniment of music was ever present with our early ancestors. Sometimes the voice and harp were attuned to the warrior's requiem; at other times the victories, prowess and virtues of notable chieftains formed the lays of the singers. King, chief, and dependent strove to excel in vocal or instrumental music, and very commonly were proficient in both. Never was an art held in higher honour than was music among the ancient Britons. Occasionally it led to high promotion in the land, and, in special instances, deft performers and chosen

* Part I., canto ii., v. 155.

singers, from the lower orders, were elevated to the dignities even of princes — ruling dominions and having privileges, rewards, and honours bestowed upon them solely for their musical worth and talent.* At every turn there was a call for music among the natives here.

British children were accustomed from their infancy to sing the glorious actions of their ancestors. It was the paramount duty of the proficient in song or instrument to impart this knowledge to the young, and they in their turn were required to hand on the teaching which they had received. This responsibility became sacred. Well, too ; for without it much of the tradition concerning the country which was carried through centuries, until writing became known, would have been lost. The Welsh melodies, handed down in this way, and which appeal to the feelings with almost irresistible force as they break the deep night air in the remote villages of the Principality, are to-day alive with tones and intervals of themes which centuries ago burst forth from most heroic Britons. In the south-west extremity of England smoulder the remains of many an early British theme, religious and profane. The folk-song, or song of the soil, the origin of which dates back to a time of which

* For many years this practice prevailed in Britain ; and, to cite a notable case, was it not this same spirit and custom which led King Richard II. (1366-1399), many years afterwards, to convey to Geoffrey Chaucer the manor of Neweline in Oxfordshire, in reward for his poems ?

man knoweth not, is, now and then, the unextinguished fire of British ancients, which untold centuries of future usage will barely efface. So with the carol. Many an example of this beautiful musical form hails from some outlying district where its origin is unknown. We cannot divine the authorship of the tune, and although the carol itself generally has the sacred Bethlehem scene for its subject, so unlike is the music to any earliest Church music, that very often the tune would appear to be older even than the Holy Manger story which it clothes. Traditional, we say of such tunes ; and it is not unlikely that among them are remnants of ancient sacrificial chants and melodies, understood of the people long before Christianity was introduced into Britain ; tunes which have passed from breast to breast ; tunes so affecting, so deep-reaching, that they can never be obliterated, but remain as good to-day as they were when sounded amid the heathen temple-worship of Britain 2,000 years ago, or when, perchance, they fell upon the ears of a kingly Caractacus or Togodumnus.

In their homes the Britons used music to lull the children to sleep much as we do now. Here is a **Uses for Music.** lullaby, that was played to soothe to sleep the Princess Gwenllian, or 'fair beauty,' daughter of Prince Rhys ab Griffith, who died in the year 1190. The tune, however, is probably of much more ancient date :

ORDDIGAN HÛN GWENLLIAN.

(*The Harmony of Gwenllian's Repose.*)

At the British funerals, especially, music was a feature. From the Ossianic poems we learn that the most important of all the rites of sepulture among the ancient Britons was the funeral-song containing the praises of the deceased, sung by a number of bards to the music of their harps when the body was deposited in the grave :

‘Then about the mound
The warriors rode, and raised a mournful song
For their dead king, exalted his brave deeds,
Holding it fit men honour their liege lord,
Praise him and love him when his soul is fled.’

BEOWULF (Fourth Century).

To want a funeral-song was esteemed the greatest misfortune and disgrace, as the belief prevailed that without it the spirits of the dead would enjoy neither rest nor happiness in the world to come. The Britons even introduced the art into their ornament, as the pavement at Brading shows. When the Romans had taught them the art, the British worked wondrous tessellated pavements, and often incorporated a representation of Orpheus with a lyre. At Woodchester, in Gloucestershire, a splendid pavement of musical design has been traced.

To the laudable spirit concerning the handing down of the art may be attributed that growth and influence of music in the island during several centuries, when appalling trouble and disaster might easily have tempted the people to unstring and hang up their harps for ever.

It was to these eminently practical uses that music was put in early Britain, besides which it served not less prominently as a favourite amusement. It was all this also which the Roman legions, with steel gladius, pilum, and short double-edged sword, sought to obliterate ; but the soldiers could not penetrate the caves and fastnesses of armed Albion, to which the British harper and singer escaped when hunted for his life.

Whether the British possessed any actual musical system is unknown. Most likely they did. A well-ordered people like the Britons probably had means

Method for delineating and disseminating their **or System**. musical knowledge. Such an arrangement would be obvious, especially for the purpose—so important with the Briton—of teaching the art to the young. Nothing exists pointing to a method. Every remnant of even a most perfect system would easily have become effaced and destroyed, however, during the centuries of devastation which the country passed through under the rule and visitations of the Saxons and Danes. The Irish, it is tolerably certain, had a system of musical notation of their own, long before Guido's invention of the staff and musical characters. 'The very earliest Welsh records,' wrote the late Sir Frederick A. Gore Ouseley, Oxford University Professor of Music, 'seem to prove the existence of harmony in Wales. Doubtless it was of the rudest kind ; but it was far in

advance of the miserable attempts at harmony (if we may call it so) which we find in the works of the early writers on musical theory.*

Every ancient Briton carried music in his breast, however, and the soul of harmony ne'er was stilled till death laid him low. Then came the outpourings of great grief moulded into incantation, funeral chant, and lamentation—plaints which these big-hearted ancestors of ours sang with strong resemblance to the manner of the Hebrews. Here and there in an early manuscript an ancient sepulchral verse has been preserved, and may well be cherished if we would commemorate the deeds of valiant Britons who were our forefathers.

Fortunately, we are not without a clue to the style of British music. Its striking feature was its indisputably indigenous character. Hospitality and warm affection were esteemed a virtue among the Britons, and this quality reflected itself in the native music, stamping it as a home production. When visitors

**British
Music.
Character.** —even strangers—arrived at a house, this genial and good-natured spirit diffused itself over the whole place, and music from the harps resounded on all sides. The art was a growth, swelling with that warm affection and naturalness out of which our scientific musical system has grown. So that the traditional tunes, even as they have come down to us, may well be believed

* 'History of Music' (Naumann-Ouseley), vol. i., p. 395.

in; for they carry with them the flavour of sterling antiquity, and a thorough genuineness. Some have reached us we know not how, others in written characters; while many have been noted down by more recent enthusiastic collectors as they were sung from the lips of the old people who best remembered them, and who had received them from their ancestors. Here are two further specimens of these old time tunes :

Y BRYTHON.

(The Britons.)

The musical score consists of three staves of music. The top staff is in treble clef, 6/4 time, and B-flat key signature. It features a 'Plaintively.' dynamic instruction. The middle staff is in bass clef, 6/4 time, and B-flat key signature. The bottom staff is in bass clef, 2/4 time, and B-flat key signature. The music is composed of various note heads, stems, and rests, with dynamics such as 'p' (piano), 'f' (forte), and 'tr' (trill).



YR HÊN ERDDIGAN.

(*The Ancient Harmony.*)



The image shows three staves of musical notation. The top staff is in G clef, common time, with a treble clef. It consists of two measures of music, with a trill symbol over the second measure. The middle staff is in C clef, common time, with a bass clef. It also consists of two measures of music. The bottom staff is in C clef, common time, with a bass clef. It consists of two measures of music, with a basso continuo basso staff below it. The notation is typical of 18th-century musical scores.

Our attention is chiefly directed to the melodies, since these are necessarily the more genuine portion. The basses and harmonies supplied to them are, for the most part, the creations of comparatively recent 'improvers' and adapters with a craze for investing all old relics with their personality, and as such should be received with caution. The tunes themselves, however, breathe the genuine lyrical spirit, and have the true ring of originality. This is not surprising, for they were spontaneous outbursts, prompted by the very scenes and occasions which they picture. All are strongly marked and charac-

terized by wild flight and imagination — features which become the more noticeable the further we trace back for such tunes :

‘ Britain, whose genius is in song exprest,
Bold and sublime, but negligently drest.’

That which we know as Welsh music, most closely resembles the original British music. As Sir Frederick Gore Ouseley has said, ‘ Probably no race of men has preserved so much, unaltered, from the great storehouse of the past as these Cambro-Britons ; and it is, therefore, not unreasonable to conclude that in their oldest tunes we may have the remains of what was anciently the music of this country long before the Roman invasion under Julius Cæsar.’*

In many cases the melodies sound like the actual tunes themselves, brought down to us through the ages with scarcely a flaw or a missing tone—so strongly-linked was the first workmanship. Here and there, however, a tune has become slightly altered and modernized in the process of handing down from generation to generation ; but the old structure remains, and though the ‘ improvers ’ may, as they do, soften and spoil its sturdy character, they cannot get rid of the grand original theme, which has braved the ravages of time and fashion while borne along down the ages. We still recognize the

* ‘ History of Music,’ Naumann, p. 395.

same plaintive mood in these ancient vocal relics, their peculiarly sympathetic reach, and the pent-up earnestness which are alike properties of our oldest Irish, Welsh, and Scottish airs, as well as of that music of the East which, with other characteristics of the great Aryan family, affected the artistic tendencies of Britain and other parts of Europe where this Celtic off-shoot originally settled.

To this day the old British spirit permeates the Welsh more than other musical people. We all know how musically-gifted they are, and what fine musical perception is theirs. It needs but a glance, too, at musical life around us, whether in the home or in the concert-room, to see how our best singers and choirs may be traced to those outlying districts where the conditions of Britain's earliest inhabitants and their descendants have been least affected by the march of time and fashion. That the art of song should also be the direction in which the Welsh show a predilection—just as Britain's earliest musicians did—would seem to warrant the theory that those germs of our musical life of to-day which burst from the soil when Britain was emerging from a state of paganism, have not only always been indigenous, but have come down to us with something of their grand old force and affecting properties.

Nor was Britain's music, long and long prior to the Saxon invasion, confined to the secular kind

alone. Sacred music had been slowly but surely spreading its benign influence in Britain, in services dedicated to the true God, two or three centuries

Earliest Sacred Music. before the time of Augustine, who, as we shall see, first set foot on English soil

in the year 597 A.D. Historians have conclusively proved the existence of a regular church in Britain some 150 years and more preceding the Saxon period. 'As early as 203 A.D.', says Tertullian, 'there were Christians in Britain.' Origen, writing about 240 A.D., says that in his day the religion of Christianity was established in Britain; and one Amphibalus, a native clergyman, is singled out. Who does not know the story of St. Alban, the proto-martyr of Britain, who gave up his life for the Cross? History places beyond dispute, too, the fact that British Bishops of York, London, and Usk, in 314 A.D., attended the Council of Arles, etc. All these holy men preached Christianity, which first reached Britain, it may be, from St. Joseph of Arimathea—

‘From our old books I know
That Joseph came of old to Glastonbury’*—

or other eye-witnesses of the incidents in that awful drama of the Crucifixion.

The first musical element in the services of the new faith in Britain must have been slender indeed—consisting probably of an early Christian chant,

* Tennyson : ‘The Holy Grail.’

sung antiphonally, after the manner in which the Hebrews sang—thus forecasting the beautiful double choir, or decani and cantoris, effects of later ecclesiastical music. Probably it was restricted to vocal music, for although the Christians of Alexandria (180 A.D.) set the example of using a flute during the singing of the Last Supper chant, orchestral accompaniments in religious services might only have attracted and incensed the more the enemies of the new religion in Britain. In the second century the minds of holy men thought of such a service-music as could be adopted generally in Christian churches. Britain particularly shared in this, and as the churches were built on a larger scale, the simple unaffected music of early times probably gave way to more advanced singing by trained voices. Indeed, it is known that in 367 A.D. the Laodicean Council issued a canon prescribing that only those duly appointed should sing in the churches. ‘None but the canons and the choir who sing out of the parchment books should presume to sing in the church’—so ran the order.

Nowhere did early sacred music find more scope than in Britain. The people in several districts had become cultivated, and grown wealthy. There is not sufficient evidence to prove that the Church service-music partook of other than the original character of a simple chant and hymn which the Bishops and clergy could sanction by ecclesiastical

precedent. Yet it is hard to believe that the Britons, so fond of music, and enraptured with the Christian faith, would content themselves with anything short of a hearty service of song, if not of instrumental music. There is little reason to doubt that the

**The
Church
Services.**

Church services became of an elaborate and gorgeous character, anticipating not unfavourably the vocal part of the Roman ritual as rendered now. In such a case music would necessarily be a feature, and one which the harmonious tendencies of the tribes would render quite practicable. A people with distinct musical talent and aspirations—who made the practice of the art a part of their daily life, who used music in so many secular ways—would be all disposed towards giving of their best when their art took the shape of music of the sanctuary. There could easily have been a united effort in choral song, consisting largely, perhaps, of unisonal singing, varied by outbursts of harmony. Such a polyphous art would have been as possible then as now. If only of an impulsive and intuitive order, it was yet pure British harmony, and would prove grand indeed, coming spontaneously from the lips of men and women full and fresh with ecstatic enthusiasm for the new Christianity, and as pre-eminently gifted in and sensitive to song, as the native Britons unquestionably ever were.

It would not have been impossible even for an

ecclesiastical music system to have existed. In civilized districts of Britain, like the south-east, much social refinement had been obtained. According to Gildas (516-570 A.D.), there were some twenty-eight principal cities in the time of the old Britons, where were the homes of nobles whose costly apparel included garments dyed in gorgeous colours and embroidered with gold, chains of gold about the neck, finger-rings and gold armlets. The ladies were adorned with gold bracelets, brooches, corslets of silver and gold, with necklets of amber and gold intermixed. Then even was London 'crowded with merchants.'

We may assume that the ceremonials in which such an aristocracy engaged would be conducted with corresponding splendour, and, since the churches would be the scenes of important gatherings, we may conclude that the music and ritual employed were on a scale of some grandeur. Could there have been a function, for instance, like the baptism to Christianity of such important personages as the Kings of Dublin and Munster (which ceremony St. Patrick himself performed) without the aid of praise and thanksgiving? Nor is it conceivable that music would fail to be a feature at the regular services, and especially at the confirmations, one of which is historically famous on account of Carotick, Prince of Wales, attacking the congregation and pursuing it before the eyes of St. Patrick.

Historical records furnish collateral evidence respecting early sacred music resources. The Roman Breviary tells us that St. Patrick, Bishop of Ireland (420-492 A.D.), was accustomed to perform daily 'the whole Psalter, together with the canticles and hymns,' which were, of course, the forms of song and praise used in his day throughout the Irish churches. Now St. Patrick, it is maintained, knew nothing of Papal authority, and as he was ordained in Scotland, and afterwards devoted his life to the work of converting the Irish,* who were all idolaters, it is fair to claim that the music of his Church was of distinct parentage from that which Augustine the missionary subsequently brought with him.

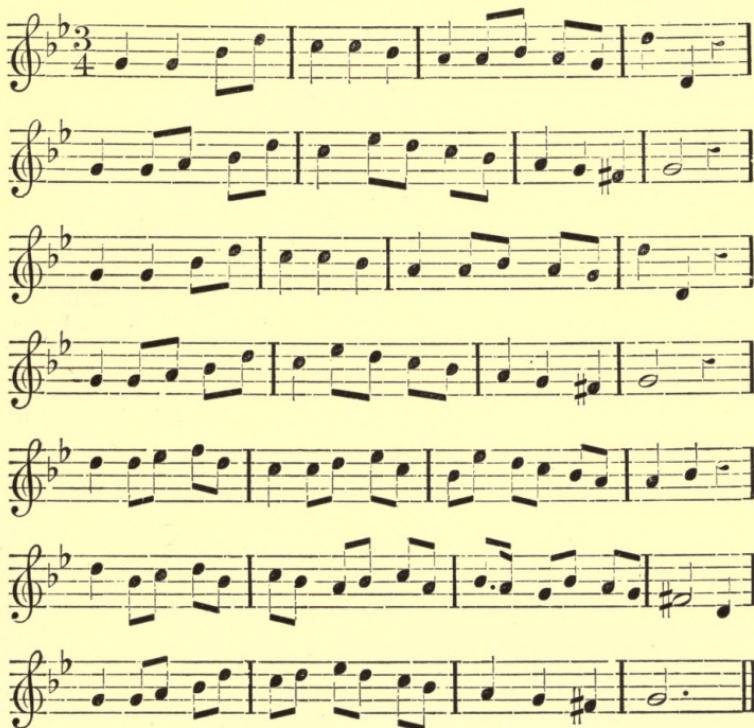
After Augustine had landed here, we read of the seven British Bishops, who with Dinoth, Abbot of Bangor, met Augustine and his followers at a conference at a spot in Worcestershire, since cherished as Augustine's Oak. Here it was, probably, that the great Apostle to the Saxons made his appeal to the British clergy to join with him in combating the paganism of the country, especially the idolatry of that pre-eminently destructive people, the heathen English. Our forefathers built the British churches, and we may be sure as religiously provided some

* A MS. 'Hymnus S. Patrii Magistri Scotorum,' originally in the library of St. Columbanus at Bobbio, and now in the Ambrosian Library at Milan, is worth examination.

kind of music for the services ; but just as scarcely a fragment survives of the ecclesiastical architecture of Christian Britain, so also every musical remnant, whether note or record, has vanished in that complete destruction of everything British which the Saxon pagans wrought. One thing is tolerably certain : The ancient British Church before the Conquest must have been a greater, grander reality than any historian has ever painted it.

There is no reason whatever—despite the persistent foreign neglect of us as a musical nation—why we should not continue the cherished belief that from time immemorial music has been a decided characteristic of the inhabitants of this country ; also that a deep-seated passion for vocal and instrumental harmony—strong and distinctive enough to outlive all untoward processes of time, calamity, and fashion—has filled the breast of the British subject since the remotest ages. It ever was unquestionably and distinctly British, and to-day it still lives in the melodies of England and Wales, Scotland and Ireland. If the music of this country should, happily, be ever re-invested with its own legitimate character, it would probably derive more distinctive quality from the Welsh, Scotch, and Irish melodic germs than from the English, which is less marked in character than either of its neighbours, as a comparison of the following melodies will show :

English.*Tune by HENRY VIII.**Scottish.**Traditional.**Irish.**Traditional.*

*Welsh.**Traditional.*

Ruder, of course, than the above melodies were the first British tunes ; but the peculiar character—the plaintive pathos—distinguishing the quotations will have been even more strongly marked in

Britain's earliest music. Each century softens that original musical distinctiveness ; and, easy as it is to detect the splendid Celtic quality, this cannot be expected to grow more prominent as Time rolls on. That this true native flavour will ever cling to our national music, admits of little doubt. It is a property which marks all our past music, and belongs exclusively to Britain. No other country's tunes are tinctured with the same strange influences as are the tunes of Ireland, Scotland, and Wales particularly. The older the tunes the better are all their qualities. They are at once grand and pathetic. Even the perversity of interval and modulation which characterize the tunes of Scotland and Ireland— ascribed, it is said, to imperfect transcription at some time—cannot rob them of their lasting beauty. How symmetrical in form, and lovely in their stately evenness, too, are the Welsh melodies — almost without an exception.

PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES.

- ‘The Bardic Museum’ - - - - Jones.
- ‘*De Excidio Britanniae*’ - - - - Gildas.
- ‘Celtic Heathendom’ - - - - Rhys.
- ‘*De Bello Gallico*’ - - - - Cæsar.
- ‘Origin of English History’ - - - - Elton.
- ‘Ancient British Church’ - - - - Pryce.
- ‘Early English Church History’ - - - - Bright.
- ‘Life of St. Patrick’ - - - - Todd.
- ‘History of Music’ - - - - Naumann.
- ‘The National Music of the World’ Chorley.
- ‘History of Music’ - - - - Burney.

CHAPTER II.

SAXON MUSICAL INFLUENCE.

Saxon Visitors—Their National Characteristics—Destructiveness of the Saxons—Gallican Church Assistance—Germanus and the ‘Alleluia’ Victory—Ambrose and the Ambrosian Chant—Its Effect on Bishop Augustine—Battling with Saxon Paganism—Success of the English Clergy—Columba—Aidan—Beowulf—Anglo-Saxon Festal Hall—Gleemen or ‘Gladdeners’ of the Hall—Cædmon—Cædmon’s Musical Vision—Light from Northumbria—Benedict Biscop—Foundation of Jarrow and Wearmouth Monasteries—Bede—Bede’s Writings and his Work in the Monastery—Papal Singing-masters for Jarrow and Wearmouth—Music Schools—Death of Bede—Alcuin—Giraldus Cambrensis on Singing in England—An Anglo-Saxon Concert—Part-singing—Descant—William of Malmesbury and the Ballad—A Mixed Art-Foundation.

THE ruthless Roman all but extinguished the fire of early British music. A few embers of sacred and secular art still glowed in impenetrable spots known

Saxon to the natives, and it was these remnants of **Music.** the national musical instinct and practice—an art which had cheered the island for more than four hundred years past—which again were to be at the mercy of an obliterating conqueror—the Saxon (420-870 A.D.).

With the advent of the fifth century Britain received something of an English, as distinct from the original British, musical character from that branch of the Teuton family that occupied the district of Schleswig, and which, with clans of Jutes and Frisians, settled here from the marshy coasts of Low Germany. All were maritime marauders, lofty of stature, inured to hardships, ferocious and aggressive beyond measure—Goths, say some, who would slit the nostrils of a horse, sew up its ears to destroy its hearing, and dedicate it to their god of war. What could their musical sympathies be? One characteristic that marked them all was their jovial, boisterous nature. Whether Jute, Saxon, or Angle, all were alike in their fearless, adventurous disposition. They came first on plunder bent, and soon proved 'barbarians' indeed. Clambering into osier and skin vessels, which held a hundred or so, they ploughed the ocean and channel by day and night, armed with brown shining swords, long-handled spears, and battle-axes, which dealt destruction to every obstacle. Then arose the coarse song and drunken chorus, the drift of which was invariably death and confusion to their enemies. Chieftain, freeman, and serf, each had his song, a chorus to which was not infrequently tinged with the howl and oath. Now it was a boisterous sea-song which these sea-pirates poured forth in tempestuous tones from sturdy surf-hardened throats,

for these visitors were for the most part genuine buccaneers and maritime robbers—not the industrious population of the German district that was to change the name of Britain to that of England. If it was not a sea-song which they bellowed forth, it was an effusion having a theme to the praise of women, the virtues of wine, or hatred for enemies. Tune and words alike were worse than worthless to all who heard them.

Such was the species of music, if it can be called music, which constituted the first foreign influencing element in our national music; and that this phase of German art did not favourably impress the Briton is not surprising. For a long period, therefore, British music, or such of it as had survived the Roman ordeals, was yet cherished and practised by the natives—just as it had been in the past.

Neither Britain's men nor manners were proof, however, against the steady inroads of the enemy waging a terrible war-scourge. Worshippers of Tiw, Woden and Thor, they were inspired with fearful rage against the religion of Christ. What says an Anglo-Saxon Chronicle? ‘Ælla and Cissa besieged Andreds-cester, and slew all that dwelt therein, so that not a single Briton was there left.’ Out of the skulls of their foes they hoped to drink ale in the hall of Woden,* and in this frenzy hosts

* Our Saxon ancestors being addicted to the barbarous practice of quaffing their ale and mead on festive occasions out of the

of them flew to the altars of the British churches, murdering the priests, slaughtering the congregations, defiling the sanctuaries, and with fire and axe razing the buildings to the ground. Not a church, not a priest or worshipper was spared, so thorough was the destruction wherever it was directed. Thus, what was beautiful in the first Christian churches in Britain was mercilessly effaced by the English. No wonder that later bards lamented such doings with regret and reproach.

‘Ye sapient Druids,
Sing praises to Arthur,’

sang Taliesin, in lauding the son of Uther for his prowess at the battle of Goddan ; nor can we be surprised that, when nearly two centuries afterwards Augustine called upon the remnants of the British clergy to help him in the work of conversion, they pointed to the terrible struggles and exterminating processes of the past, and were tardy in promising peace or pardon to a race which had torn down their churches and violated holy things. No ordinary power was needed to reconcile Briton and Saxon ; only the precious influence of the new Faith could

skulls of their enemies, Rowena, the fair daughter of Hengist, obtains the credit of having converted the Prince Vortigern from the custom by presenting to him a wine-bowl with the salutation, ‘Wass-heil,’ to which the Prince not only responded by a counter-sign of ‘Drinc-heil,’ but, smitten with her great beauty, forthwith married her.

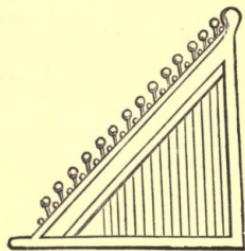
avail. This blessing, happily, was hovering over the island, and like a dove was soon to settle with the olive branch of peace for all. The work of the Church was destined to break out again in Brito-England; sacred musical art would exert its power over the hearts and minds of heathen oppressors alike with the natives who, through toils of unsuccessful warfare, had degenerated and fallen from the Faith.

The new help came from Gaul, and the aid and guidance which the British clergy received from the Gallican Church materially forwarded the cause of

Gallican Church Music. Church music among the Saxons. Brought originally from Ephesus, the Gallican Liturgy included the Apostles' Creed, Baptism, Confirmation, and Burial services. Little is known of its style of music, yet as hymns, psalms, and a Mass were used, a species of monotone with inflexions was probably employed. This was the ecclesiastical music which preceded the *Cantus Romanus* of Gregory, which Augustine brought two hundred years later. Sturdy prelates were these bishops from France, and the names of two—Germanus, Bishop of Auxerre, and Lupus, Bishop of Troyes—have fitly been preserved. Germanus (380-448 A.D.), Bishop of Sodor and Man, and Lupus (383-479 A.D.), his co-bishop—true soldiers of the Cross—served not only at the altar, but were required to lead their British flocks against

their foes, sometimes Saxons, at others Picts and Scots. A memorable encounter was in the Dee Valley (429 A.D.), when, by a strategic shout of an

‘Alleluia,’ which made the hills reverberate, the affrighted Picts fled before Germanus and his hosts, and a bloodless victory—since famous among the conquests of the Cross—was gained at Maes Garmon.



TRIANGULAR SAXON HARP
OF THE NINTH CENTURY.

Our British ancestors were indebted to Germanus for the introduction of the Gallican Church chant many years prior to the coming of Augustine. It is well to remember the condition of ecclesiastical music in England before it received the stimulating example and influence of the Gregorian method which Augustine introduced. The old British Church music had all but gone, and the Church music here of which we have the first historical information, if no specimens, was undoubtedly the Gallican chant—*id est*, the music of the Church in Gaul. It was the chant adopted, probably, in all the Christian churches of Europe immediately preceding the introduction of the Gregorian chant, and since the British bishops were then frequently consecrated in France, they would naturally bring that service-music with them to England to displace the heathen temple tunes which were still obtaining under the

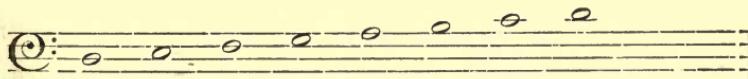
Druids, and to cement together such fragments as remained of the old British Church music. When Restitutus, Bishop of London, with Eborius, Bishop of York, and Adelphius, Bishop of Caerleon-on-Usk, attended the Church Council at Arles (314 A.D.), they would hear this Gallican chant, and, approving of it, use it in their churches. It, or the native British Church music, constituted the sole musical means in the Church until the Roman chant came to displace and carry all before it.

In the year 374 A.D. the music school of Milan, presided over by Ambrose (333-398 A.D.), was opened. Its first music principles were derived from the Eastern Church, but the then known ecclesiastical chanting having fallen into much confusion, this prelate introduced into Milan Cathedral a form and style in which Divine service should be sung, which he named the *Cantus Ambrosianus*, or Ambrosian Chant. It was based on the following four modes or scales, bearing the names of four 'Authentic' Greek modes, not identical with them, but probably founded by Ambrose on the same principle :

Ambrose and the Ambrosian Chant.

AMBROSE'S AUTHENTIC MODES.

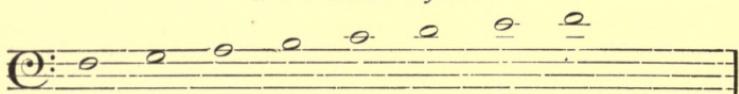
First Tone; Dorian.



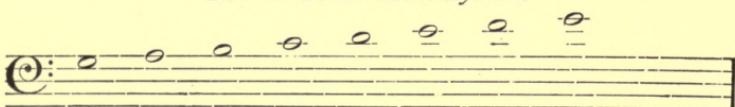
Second Tone: Phrygian.



Third Tone: Lydian.



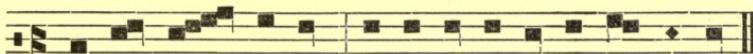
Fourth Tone: Mixo-Lydian.



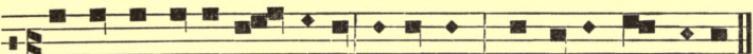
AMBROSIAN CHANTS.



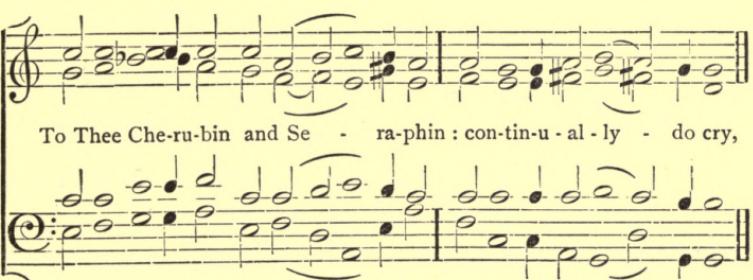
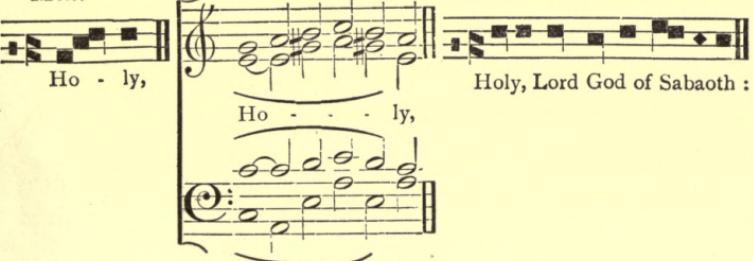
Scarcely a vestige of this music can be traced for certain, despite the researches of Burney, Choron, and other authorities who examined the missals and listened to the singing at the cathedral of Milan without observing any marked difference between it and the Gregorian music, into which the Ambrosian chant would seem to have merged. Its character, however, has been fairly estimated, as the few bars from the following *Te Deum*, as set in the 'Choir Directory of Plain Song,' indicate:

*Priest or Cantors.**Full. Unison.*

We praise Thee, O God : we ac-knowl-edge Thee to be the Lord.

*Trebles. Unison.*

To Thee all An-gels cry a-loud : the Hea-vens, and all the Pow'rs therein.

*Men.*

Ho - ly,

Full. Unison.

Holy, Lord God of Sabaoth :

Ho - - - ly,

The style of sacred chanting ordered by Ambrose had the great merit of being at once simple and grand. Its soul-stirring effects may be judged, indeed, from the exclamation of Bishop Augustine (354-430 A.D.) when he first heard the Ambrosian chant at Milan : 'O God, how I wept over Thy hymns of praise. The sound poured into mine ears, and Thy truth entered my heart.' It would prove a priceless treasure could we trace some of this music ; as it is, we can only conjecture what was its character, and that of the hymns which the saintly Hilary (367 A.D.) composed for the British churches.

A dark and terrible reality did the paganism of the Angles and Saxons prove, and it was generations after their arrival in Britain ere they ceased to fall down to Woden and Thor. In the midst of paganism and barbarism the British clergy continued their work. When the Saxons poured in from the south and east coasts, and the Picts and Scots from the north and west, it was the Church only that was not lost in dismay. The services of prayer and praise held the British together, but the impression upon the Saxons was slight indeed, despite the splendid efforts of valiant preachers. In the four Saxon kingdoms the ancient British or Irish-Scots clergy had sustained the Christian religion in those provinces including Mercia, the Midland counties, Norfolk, Cornwall, Devonshire, Somerset, Wilts, Hants and Berks ; Aidan, Bishop of the Scots, had similarly

laboured in Northumberland, Durham, York, Lancashire, Westmoreland and the South of Scotland ; while Essex and Middlesex were cared for by the British prelate Cedd (654 A.D.), and all this religious enthusiasm went hand-in-hand with the wondrous sway of sacred tone and cadence.

What were the feelings of the clergy, battling against the ruthlessness of the Saxons through so many years, can readily be conjectured. Happily, they did not despair, and in God's time there were signs, here and there, which encouraged them. A severe blow was struck at the pagan religion in Britain, for instance, when Coiffi, declaring himself a convert to Christianity, called for a horse and rode off to spear the walls of the neighbouring temple of Godmundingham ; when, with no avenging fires descending from heaven, as were predicted by the crowds that looked on, he set to and burnt the fane and the idols contained within it, which had been so long venerated and feared. Yet how opposite was the demeanour of the chief Maglocune, surnamed the 'Dragon of the Island,' who, a chronicle says, 'preferred poets' pæans and satires to God's lauds sung by Christ's soldiers !' To Patrick (*circa* 410-492 A.D.), the Apostle to Ireland, we have already referred ; but in the century next following the Gospel labours were continued by Columba (521-597 A.D.), who, crossing the seas in a wicker-work skiff covered with hides, carried the first tidings of Christianity to the North of Ireland,

Iona, and the south-west portion of Scotland. It was an old bard, Gemmain by name, who trained Columba, the Apostle of Caledonia, with the traditions, and no doubt the songs and music, of Ireland. The bardic gift of song thus acquired, and afterwards exercised by Columba, won the hearts and ears of the Irish people—not less than did his preaching—for they loved much to listen to his singing.

Another great North of England missionary was Aidan (*circa* 600-651 A.D.), originally a monk of Iona, and later Bishop of Northumbria. He built his monastery at Lindisfarne, where King Oswald granted him lands, and there he restored the services and carried on the good work begun by Paulinus (597-644 A.D.), Apostle of Yorkshire. So that all through these troublous times between the Britons and Saxons, the English Church carried on its work fearlessly, and by its teachings and methods—among which was sacred music—it led the people on to that light and learning which conduced not only to their subsequent settlement, but to the great intellectual advances of the country in future generations. Without the Church, music as an art might have been irretrievably lost at this period.

England was now, after several generations of warfare and conquest, more musically Saxon than British, and it was only in the remote districts where the original music of the Briton could be heard—districts where remains of it smoulder to this day.

In considering this later Anglo-Saxon art, we are no longer upon traditional ground, since several contemporary writers can be quoted who repeatedly allude to it.

Our first authority is that most ancient fragment of Teutonic literature—the Epic bearing Beowulf's name. The date of this poem is about 520 A.D. It

Saxon furnishes a glowing picture of the musical **Glee Hall**. habit and usage of the period, proving conclusively that music was assiduously practised and encouraged by these ancestors of ours. There was the great festal hall, wherein drinking and the gleeman's song went on. It was two hundred feet long by forty feet wide, with a high roof and curved gables. It had a nave and narrow side-aisles, and pillars dividing the aisles from the nave supported the central roof. Thus, it was not unlike a modern church interior. The nave, or centre, formed the hall, and down the middle of its floor ran a stone hearth, upon which the logs blazed and crackled. At the upper end was the raised seat, or daïs, of the chief, with a crossbench, where his wife and some familiar thanes privileged to sit beside him filled the cups of the guests. On each side of the long stone hearth ran lines of tables flanked with benches and stools, whereat sat the chief's hearth-sharers. At the end, opposite the daïs, was the table for the drinking-cups, while the liquor itself was stored in gilded vats, which stood in side-spaces. Into these vats

the cup-bearers dipped their pails. Sleeping benches were provided at the sides of the aisles, and altogether the arrangements seem to have been designed for comfort and enjoyment. In such halls the gleemen chanted to their harps. Now it was one tune and story, now another, as call was made for this or that favourite incident. 'The glee-wood was touched, and Hrothgar's gleemen, "gladdeners" of the hall, told of the works of Fin's offspring, the tale of Fin Folcwalding, of Hnaef and Hengest, and the sons of Hildeburh, burnt by their mother at Hnaef's pile. The lay was sung, the gleeman sang, games were begun again, the noise was loud, the cup-bearers gave wine from wondrous cups.' So sings Beowulf in his romantic poem. Another rendering puts it : 'There was song joined with the sound of music, the glee-wood was welcomed, the song frequent, when Hrothgar's scóp, the joy of the hall, told after the sitting at mead of Fin's offspring seized by sudden danger when Healfdene's hero, Hnaef of the Scyldings, fell in Friesland.'*

Cædmon is our next witness to first English music and custom. He was a secular monk of Whitby, and the author of poems on the Creation and other Bible subjects. He died about 680 A.D. In his **Cædmon.** day the Anglo-Saxon youths were much given to music, and it was considered derogatory to their social position to be without a knowledge of the

* Beowulf.

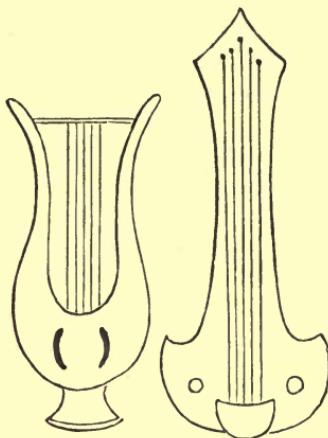
art, either vocal or instrumental. Cædmon laboured under this disadvantage: Inspired he was with poetic grace and choice metre, but he had made no acquaintance with the art of music—a disadvantage which he often deplored. ‘Cædmon continued in a worldly state [*in habitu sæculari*],’ says Bede, ‘until he arrived at an advanced age without learning any song, and thus frequently, when at a banquet it was for merriment’s sake determined that every one in his turn should sing, accompanying himself on the harp, when Cædmon saw the harp approaching him, he would arise from the table in confusion and quit the house.’ The full story of Cædmon’s musical disabilities, and of his great poetic talent, is one of the happiest pictures in Bede’s panorama of history, and may well be produced here in a translation which conveys not a little of the quaint vein of the original :

‘ In the Monasterie of the Abbesse Hilda (614-680),* at Whitby, there was a certaine brother endewed with the speciall grace of God, which was wont to make songes and meters fitt for religion and for godly meditation, in so much that what so ever he learned of the holy Scriptures by other men’s expounding, he turned and made the same anon

* Abbess of Whitby, and daughter of Hereric, nephew of Edwin, King of Northumbria. Under her the monastery at Whitby became famous, and five of the monks became bishops. She was called the ‘ Mother.’

after with poetical and musicall wordes, set together with wonderfull swetenesse and melodie in his own mother tonge. With whose verses and songes the mindes of many men were often inflamed to the contempt and despysing of the world, and desire of the everlasting life of heaven. After whome diverse other among the English men assayed to make godly and devout meters, but noman cowlede matche his connyng therein. For he learned this arte of singing and making, not towght of men, nor by any man's helpe, but he receaved the gyfte thereof freely by the only ayde and grace of God. And therefore he cowld never make any fond or vayne balade, but such things as belonged to religion and godly meditation were only mete to come out of his religious and godly mouth. For as long as he was a secular man, which was till he was well stricken in age, he never had learned any such matter of singinge. In so much that sometimes at the table, when the company was set to be merry, and agreed for the nonse, that eche man showld syng in order at his course ; he, when he sawe the harpe to com nere him, rose up at myde of supper, and gat him owt of dorres home to his owne howse. And as he so dyd on a certaine time, getting him owt of the place where they were drinking and making mery together, to the stable among the beastes which he had appoynted him to kepe and look to that nighte, and when the houre of slepe came, was gone his way

quietly to bed, as he laye, he dreamed that a certaine man stooede by him, and bad him God sped, and calling him by his name sayd to him Cædmon, I pray thee, singe me a songe. Whereto he mayde awnswere and sayd, I can not syng. For that is the matter why I came owt from the table to this place here, because I cowld not singe. But yet, quothe he againe that spake with him, thow hast somewhat to sing to me. What shall I sing? quothe he. Sing, quothe the other, the begynning of all creatures. At which answeare he began by and by to singe in the lawde and prayse of God the creatour, verses which he had never heard before, of which the sense and meaning is thys:—*Nowe must we prayse the maker of the heavenly kingdome, the power of the creatour, his counsell and devyse, the workes and actes of the father of glorie Howe he being God eternell was the maker and author of all miracles, which first unto the children of men created heaven for the top of their dwelling place, and after the omnipotent keeper of mankinde created the earthe for the flowre thereof.* This is the meaning, but not the order of the wordes which he sange in his



SAXON MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS.
(From the Cædmon MS., Oxford.)

sleepe. Now when he awoke and rose up, he remembred still by harte all the thinges that he had songe in his slepe, and dyd straight way joyne thereto more wordes in the same maner and forme of meter, and mayde up a song fitte to be songe and applyed to God. And on the morrow he came to the farmer or baylie under whom he was, and told him of the gifte that he had receaved, and being browght to the Abbesse he was commaunded in the presence of many learned men to tell his dreame and rehearse the song, that it might by the judg-
ment of them all be examyned and tryed what or whence the thing was which he reported. And it seemed to them all that some heavenly grace and gifte was graunted him of our Lorde. For more triall whereof they recited unto him the processe of some holy storie or example, willing him, if he cowld, to tourne the same into meter and verse. Which he took upon him to doo and went his way ; and on the morowe after came againe and brought the same made in very good meter which they had willed him to doo. Whereupon straightway the Abbesse acknowledging and embracing this grace and gifte of God in the man, instructed and exhorted him to forsake the world and to take the monasticall lyfe and profession upon him. Which he did, and was therefore by the commandement of the Abbesse placed in the company of the bretherne.'

This house was one of the first double monasteries

which multiplied so much in England for many years afterwards. They were composed of nuns and monks, so that vocal resources for excellent singing were always at hand. From this fact, therefore, we may conclude that the Church services and singing were on a much grander scale than is commonly imagined. One especial feature of the religious practices was the *Laus Perennis*, or Service of Perpetual Praise, kept up by seven choirs of nuns, who relieved each other in succession. Nor were the doings of such ministering singers forgotten. The Liturgy contained a special clause for them : 'Ora pro populo, interveni pro clero, intercede *pro devote femineo sexu*.'

Now was a bright light to burst forth from the gloom of the far North of England. Suddenly we are face to face with a noble figure in Early English ecclesiastical history, one whose life and example in Northumbria in those dark days are fittingly remembered and honoured in ours, especially as he was the instructor of the beloved Bede. This was **Benedict Biscop** (628 - 690 A.D.), a rich Anglo-Saxon nobleman, and one of the Anglo-Saxon Benedictines who fostered the growth of the Gregorian chant in England. Biscop, in obedience to the custom of the times for the clergy to go to Rome for studying and acquiring music, had visited that city no less than five times, and was highly regarded by Pope Agatho for his perfect

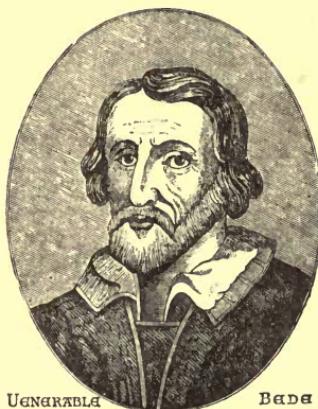
knowledge of Church music. In 678 A.D. we find him sending to Rome for singers versed in the *Cantus Romanus* for York Cathedral. Bede wrote the Life of Benedict Biscop, and does not forget to add the tribute that it was owing mainly to his exertions that the Roman chant became so well known, and firmly rooted, in the monasteries of Durham, Gerwy, and Wearmouth. In a neighbourhood where at an old temple of Apollo the people were worshipping the heathen Sun-god, he built the monasteries of Bishop Wearmouth and Jarrow, and beautified them with relics, paintings, stained-glass, illuminated Bibles, and Service-books which he brought from Rome. Biscop was himself head of the Jarrow House, where Bede succeeded him.

Bede stands out prominently among the first English authors who have borne testimony in their writings to Anglo-Saxon musical methods.

Bede. The 'Father' of English Church historians, familiarly known as the 'Venerable' Bede (672-735 A.D.), was born just before Cædmon died. The educational system of the period was divided into four divisions, of which music formed one, and Bede was among the recipients of this liberal education. He wrote a musical treatise in two parts—'Musica Theoretica' and 'Musica Pratica.' The former treated of the division of the octave, consonant and dissonant intervals, etc., the latter of notation and measure, as these existed before the inventions of

Guido and Franco. Bede, broad-minded and sweetly disposed as he was, takes a lofty and beautiful estimate of the art. According to the Venerable Presbyter, 'Music is the most worthy, courteous, pleasant, joyous and lovely of all knowledge ; it makes a man gentlemanly in his demeanour, pleasant, courteous, joyous, lovely, for it acts upon his feelings. . . . Music encourages us to bear the heaviest afflictions, administers consolation in every difficulty, refreshes the broken spirit, removes headache and sorrow, expels foul spirits, and cures crossness and melancholy.'

Priest and monk, he was an indefatigable worker for the Cross, never wearying whether in the schools, his study, or in the performance of daily religious ministrations. Anxious to secure sound musical training for the scholars at Jarrow, to which monastery he had been appointed by his preceptor, Benedict Biscop, Bede not only devoted his personal energies to this end, but sought outside aid. Acquiescing, no doubt, in such earnest representations, Pope Agatho despatched John, Precentor of St. Peter's at Rome, to teach singing to the monks of Wearmouth and Jarrow, an opportunity for improve-



ment of which the music-masters in the North diligently availed themselves. The decision of the Synod of Whitby, held in 664 A.D., in favour of the Roman Liturgy, necessarily benefited the Roman music, and Celtic Church music is afterwards heard of but little. John arrived in England in the year 680 A.D., from which time the knowledge of sacred music rapidly increased in the North. The monks recognised in him a skilful teacher, so much so that the Abbots of Wearmouth and Jarrow prevailed upon him to open music-schools in the various districts of Northumbria.* Another Papal singing-master who came here later was Paul the Deacon (*circa* 720-800 A.D.). Yet another singing-master in Northumbria, whose name has come down to us, was

* This singing-master wrote Pope Gregory's Life, 'Vita S. Gregorii,' in which he warmly rates the Germans and French, whom he had met probably at the Court of Charlemagne, for being unable to properly sing the Gregorian chant. 'Wholly unable to express its sweetness,' writes the aggrieved voice-trainer, 'they injure it by barbarous changes, suggested either by their natural ferocity or inconstancy of disposition. Their figures were gigantic, and, when they sang, it was rather thunder than musical tones. Their rude throats, instead of the inflexions of pleasing melody, formed such rough sounds as resembled the noise of a cart jolting down a pair of stairs.' As there is no blame attached to the English singers, we may fairly assume that they secured good results from their singing.

The following are two specimens of the Gregorian chant harmonized: the one is from the solemn *Miserere*, which is chanted in the Roman Catholic service during the Holy Week; the other is the beginning of the Easter Hymn, which is of a more lively character:—

Edde, surnamed Stephen, who was sent thither out of Kent by Wilfred the Primate, 709 A.D.

Thus, the Roman service method, and the manner of rendering the Gregorian music, came from the fountain-head, thanks to the wisdom and foresight of Benedict and Bede. Productive of so much good, too, was this step, that the example was followed by the missionaries in other parts of the island. As Augustine and his successors proceeded in their work, churches were built, and the need for clergy increased accordingly. This demand was met by a steady flowing in of prelates and other Churchmen from Rome, who being all more or less familiar with Gregorian music, also steadily advanced the cause of Church music throughout England. Wherever a

THE MISERERE.

Mis-e-re-re me - i De - us, secundum

Mis-e-re-re me - i De - us, secundum

magnam mi - ser - i - cor - di - am tu - am.

magnam mi - ser - i - cor - di - am tu - am.

monastery was founded—and pious souls of the time reared them with almost prodigal splendour—a music-school was attached with conveniences for

THE EASTER HYMN.

A musical score for three voices (Soprano, Alto, and Bass) on four-line staves. The music consists of two parts. The first part, 'O filii et filiae', includes lyrics for 'O filii et filiae, Rex celles-tis,' and 'Rex gloriæ, morte sur-rex-it ho-di-e'. The second part, 'Alleluia', includes lyrics for 'Al-le-lu-ia, Al-le-lu-ia, Al-le-lu-ia,' and 'Al-le-lu-ia, Al-le-lu-ia, Al-le-lu-ia,' followed by a final 'Al-le-lu-ia' on a single staff.

housing as well as for training the singers in the proper rendering of the Mass and evensong music. An obstacle, however, was the difficulty of finding competent teachers outside Rome, which was not overcome until the first musical training-school was opened at Canterbury.

Every good work is hindered, and a day came when a dark cloud spread over Jarrow. A higher call awaited the saintly servant—the last scene of

Death of Bede. whose life furnishes a pattern day for all earnest workers, and serves also as an index to the regular life within the monastery when Bede was its head. It was Ascension Day (May 26, 735), when, distressed and exhausted with asthma, Bede had all but concluded his translation of St. John's Gospel for the use of the people. 'In the evening his boy-scribe (Cuthbert) said to him : "One sentence, dear master, is left unfinished." He bade him write quickly. Soon the boy announced that it was finished. "True," the dying man said, "it is finished. Take mine head between thy hands and raise me. Full fain would I sit with my face to my holy oratory, where I was ever wont to pray, that sitting so I may call on my Father." And so he sat on the floor of his cell, and chanted, "Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost." And as he breathed the words "the Holy Ghost" he died.' Thus passed to the eternal habitations this priest-teacher, who had spent nearly the whole of

his life in the monastery at Jarrow 'observing the monastic rule and the daily ministry of singing in the church':

'O Venerable Bede !

The saint, the scholar, from a circle freed
Of toil stupendous.'

WORDSWORTH.

The Church having spread her loving hands over the land, men, large in mind like the Venerable Bede, were to rise up to carry on her work in England.

Alcuin. Alcuin (735-804 A.D.), born in the year of

Bede's death, became a leading musical writer and ecclesiastic. He followed in Bede's footsteps. As a boy he entered St. Mary's Abbey, York, and studied under Egbert, Archbishop of York, who gave him a tonsure and ordained him deacon. He became well versed in music and other liberal learning—so much so that, after succeeding Egbert at York, the Emperor Charlemagne begged him to accept a permanent appointment as head of the Palatine schools, one great object that Charlemagne had being to disseminate Gregory's system of music throughout the churches and schools of France and Germany. Alcuin's labours have been well set out in the words of a German poet, who, after recounting Britain's indebtedness to her son, turns aside to sing :

'Nor smaller tokens of esteem from France
Alcuinas claims who durst himself advance
Single against whole troops of ignorance.'

'Twas he transported Britain's richest ware,
Language and arts, and kindly taught them here.
With him, his master Bede shall ever live,
And all the learning he engross'd survive.'

We are informed by Bede that in the beginning of the eighth century the custom of the Saxons here was to indulge in social and domestic singing in their own language, accompanying their **Saxon Part-singing.** Many years later we meet with another musical authority, Giraldus Cambrensis (born 1147, died 1220). He was Archdeacon and afterwards Bishop of St. David's, and although not altogether to be depended upon in literary matters, remains nevertheless a valuable chronicler concerning an age when writers upon contemporary social life were scarce indeed. He wrote and addressed his 'Gemma Ecclesiastica,' or 'Jewel of the Church,' to the Welsh clergy; and in this book occurs an anecdote which shows that even in those days the catchy vein of a popular song was apt to obtrude itself at not always the right time or place. Gerald opposing the popular custom of dancing and singing profane songs in the churchyards on saints' days—a form of amusement which had grown into a nuisance—says that a priest of Worcester, who had been hearing the refrain of a song all night in such dances in the churchyard, when he stood next morning at the altar, in full canonicals, instead of proceeding with

the *Dominus Vobiscum*, chanted in a loud voice, to the scandal of the congregation, the refrain of the song that had haunted him :

‘Swete lamman dhin are.’

William of Norhall, the Bishop, hearing of this, publicly anathematized that song by synod and chapter, and forbade it ever to be sung in his diocese. How excellent a thing if not a few of the popular airs of the present day could be publicly accursed in the same way! Naturally, both the professional and amateur musician are chiefly interested in Giraldus for the musical information he affords them. In praise of his native country this early English antiquary and scholar says: ‘Britain, although divided from the rest of the world, has always been partial to bards, among the most celebrated of whom are to be reckoned Plennydd, Oron and Gildas,’ names which have already come under our notice. Giraldus refers especially to an Anglo-Saxon concert, and describes the mode of singing—a style which had obtained, probably, among the British long before that time. ‘In their musical concerts,’ he says, ‘they do not all sing in unison, as is the custom of other nations, *but in different parts*, so that as many as you see individuals, so many melodies and various parts you hear, all ultimately smoothly uniting under the softness of B flat into consonance and organic melody [*i.e.*, in harmony]. And moreover, in the northern parts of Britain, beyond the Humber, in

the neighbourhood of York, the Angles in singing employ a similar kind of symphonious harmony, using, however, only two parts, one deeply murmuring in the bass, the other delightfully warbling in the treble. Nor is this an acquired custom among the nations, but by long usage is, as it were, converted into their nature; and has now taken such root in the constituent prejudices of both peoples, that neither among the former, where the custom of singing in several parts prevails, nor among the latter, where they sing in two parts, can a simple melody be well performed. What, moreover, is more remarkable, children from their earliest years observe the same custom. Since, however, among the Angles this method is not universally observed, but only by the more northern inhabitants, I conceive that they have borrowed their method of singing, as well as speaking, from the Danes and Norwegians, who were more frequently accustomed to occupy as well as longer to retain possession of those parts of the island.'

'This,' to quote no less an authority than that learned antiquary, the late Mr. William Chappell, 'may fairly be taken as evidence that part-singing was common in Wales, or that at least they made descant to their tunes, in the same way that singers did to the plain-song or *canto fermo* of the Church at the same period; also that singing in two parts was common in the North of England, and that

children tried to imitate it. Burney and Hawkins think that what Giraldus says of the singing of the people in Northumberland, in two parts, is reconcilable to probability, because of the schools established there in the time of Bede ; but Burney doubts his account of the Welsh singing in many parts, and makes this “*turbâ canentium*”* to be *of the common people*, adding, “we can have no exalted idea of the harmony of an *untaught* crowd.” These, however, are his own inferences. Giraldus does not say that the singers were untaught, or that they were of the common people. As he is describing what was the custom in his own time, not what had taken place a century before, there seems no sufficient ground for disbelieving his statement, and least of all should they who are of the opinion that all musical knowledge was derived from the monasteries call it in question, since, as already shown, part-music had then existed in the Church, in the form of descant, for three centuries.†

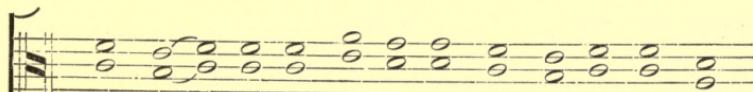
This Descant—the forerunner of counterpoint and prick-song, or written music—it may be well to add, **Descant.** was the first ecclesiastical harmony, and consisted originally of extemporaneous singing by the more skilled musicians in fourths, fifths, and octaves, above and below the plain-song melody, or tune of the Church ; and although in its

* Bede's Latin.

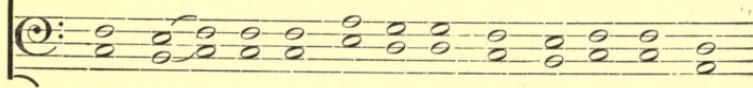
† ‘Popular Music of the Olden Time’ (Chappell).

original sense it implied only singing in two parts, it had more considerable advances in the ninth century, towards the end of which we find specimens still existing, of harmony in three and four parts.

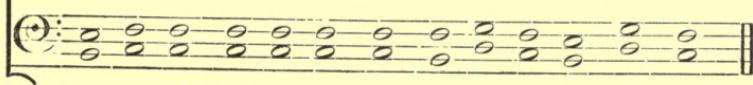
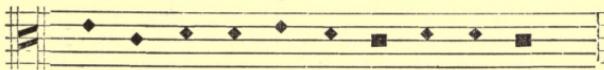
SPECIMENS OF DESCANT.



Sit glo - ri - a Do - mi - ni, in sæ - cu - la, læ -



ta - bi - tur Do - mi - nus in o - pe - ri - bus su - is.

*Cantus.*

Ve - ni - te ad - - - o - re - mus.

Organum.*Translation.*

It would be difficult to determine when such a natural art as that of adding another vocal part to one that was already known did not exist in this country. Man is a harmonious creature, **An Unwritten Art.** who must have been endued from the beginning with the faculty of forming harmony with his voice — just as the merest children to-day can add what they term 'seconds' to a tune — albeit he was far removed from the age when musical thoughts could find literal expression through signs which could be understood not only by their creator, but also by all to come after him. Thus, little reliance can be placed upon deductions concerning the extent to which music was, or was not, practised in this country when conclusions are based solely upon what can be proved by actual manuscript evidence. That before the age when writing became known and was practised, there existed here a species of natural vocal music of a truly harmonious order, part-music more extensive and complete than is reflected in any manuscript for several centuries after, is, to our mind, as reasonable a matter for acceptance and belief as would be the proposition that at that period the winds were blowing and the trees growing. Having an existence, then, it is of little moment by whom or where it was cultivated.

We are indebted, doubtless, to the monasteries for all that we possess relating to our earliest music

but that for several centuries there was a great unwritten art growth which has been forgotten or neglected by the first musical writers and theorists can scarcely be refuted. Secular music must have been much more varied and extensive than any documents of the period suggest, since it was the art of writing and musical notation which were so little advanced, not the native enthusiasm for music. The inventions of Guido and Franco had hardly become felt, and for long after this time musical notation was in such an imperfect state that it used to take nine or ten years to acquire a fair knowledge of it. The capacity of our ancestors, the Briton and Saxon, to provide musical enjoyment for themselves and those around them would be considerably more than is indicated by any musical data of the time, for the first writings show only the state of music as it was growing into a science, capable of being expressed by a notation. Notation long afterwards represented almost solely the music of the cloister, for secular music found little favour in the eyes of the clergy and those who occupied the monasteries.

We must not fall into the error, then, of supposing that only such music obtained during the early centuries as is represented by specimens to hand. These refer entirely to the scientific art of our country, not to the natural, innate, harmonious expression of our forefathers, which no musically-learned one has transmitted to us, and of which we

should have known nothing, save for such fortunate digressions in the current annals as are afforded here and there in the strains of the bards and scóps, and in the writing of such chroniclers as Bede, Giraldus, and others.

The ballad, for instance, was a favourite musical form with the people at this time. The English have always been a ballad-loving people, and even the

Saxon present-day tendency towards this class of **Ballad**. music does not exceed the passion displayed for it eight hundred years ago. In them was preserved much of the country's history and glory. William of Malmesbury (1095-1143), who wrote 'De Gestis Regum Anglorum,' and had access to English historical materials now lost, remarks : 'Thus far I have written from trustworthy testimony. That which follows I have learnt more from old ballads, popular through succeeding times, than from books written expressly for the information of posterity. I have subjoined them not to defend their veracity, but to put the reader in possession of all I know.'

Concerning the music which accompanied the Anglo-Saxon ballad, little is definitely known. No threads of such secular music exist, and all that authorities can do is to point to remnants of the Church music of such early times, which afford the only clue to the probable melody of the ballad or narratory story. In this sacred music, consisting chiefly of hymns with Latin words, regulated tune is

definable—all pointing to the existence of, and an acquaintanceship with, a systematic scale. So that at the period which we are considering there were at least three musical elements at work in this England of ours, namely: (α) the old British spirit, which still lingered in the extreme parts of England, and especially of Wales, Scotland, and Ireland; (β) the home tastes and musical fashions of the Saxons or English, which were to be replaced eventually by (γ) the musical means and modes of the new generations of Englishmen. These were the parts out of which the important musical fabric of British art of to-day were to spring. One more powerful factor—Norman art and influence—was presently to step in, and the solid, if mixed, foundation of our country's musical life and practice was permanently provided.

PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES.

‘Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.’	
‘Popular Music of the Olden Time’	Chappell.
‘History of England’	- - - - Lingard.
‘History of Music’	- - - - Burney.
‘English Writers’	- - - - Morley.
‘English Songs’	- - - - Ritson.
‘History of the Anglo-Saxons’	- - Sharon Turner.
‘History of Wales’	- - - - Williams.
‘Reliques of Ancient English Poetry’	Percy.
‘Music of the Anglo-Saxons’	- - Wackerbarth.
‘Saxons in England’	- - - - Kemble.
‘ <i>Historia Ecclesiastica</i> ’	- - - - Bede.
‘Constitutional History’	- - - - Stubbs.

CHAPTER III.

BARDS, BARDISM AND SCALDS.

Cæsar's References to Music—Bardic Triads—The Eisteddfod, or Session of Bards—Famous British Bards—Bardism and the British Administration—Electing the Bards—Vortigern's Example—Arthur and other Bards—The Scóp—Widsith—Specimens of his Songs—Deor—Scalds—Their Origin and Relative Orders—Taliesin—A Musical Competition at Conway—The *Leges Wallicæ*, or Welsh Laws and the Bards—Howel—Privileges and Rank of the Bards—Secular Music in Alfred's Reign—The Saxon Harp—Its Manufacture—Poet and Musician sundered in England.

CÆSAR mentions British music here and there in his 'Commentaries.' There appear to have been three musical officers, or privileged bards, attached to the **Cæsar.** British King's palace, and enjoying the favour and confidence of the ruler. They were the Harp Bard of the King, whose duty it was to communicate every new song to the Sovereign; the Crwth, or Poetic Bard; and the Ensign Bard, who recounted the genealogical tables and deeds of Britain's famous sons. They stood the judges of the country, and administered the law. At some even

earlier time they must have been held in really high esteem, since an ancient Triad singles them out :

‘ Three men there are of same regard :
A king, a harper, and a bard.’

Tacitus—and his Britons are not the savages of Cæsar’s narrative (205-276 A.D.)—relates that the ancient Britons stored their history and annals in verse, sung to the music of the harp. As authentic records of early facts, customs, etc., these bardic songs and poems, then, are invaluable, for the laws strictly forbade the bards to introduce fable; or to pervert the truth in their narrations, under penalty of fine, imprisonment, loss of dignity, and even death.

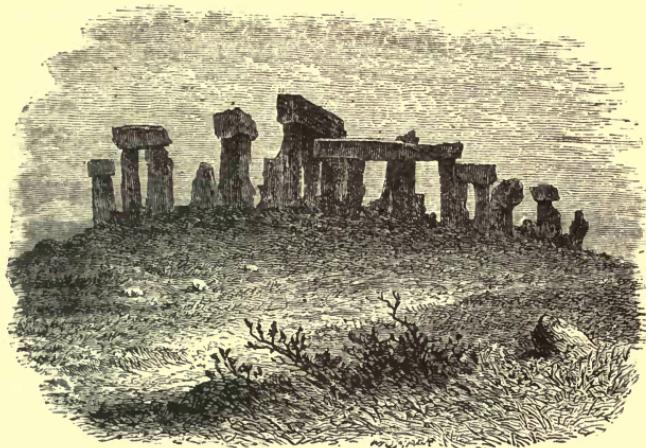
The Bardic Triads—fragments of written evidence which are treasured in museums and libraries—record the names of the principal among these ancient bards, and their characteristics. These memorials are in the Welsh language, some of them as early as the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth centuries, and were originally oral traditions, which anciently were sung by generations of bards at their gatherings :

‘ But heed, ye bards, that for the sign of onset
Ye sound the ancientest of all your rhymes,
Whose birth tradition notes not, nor who fram’d
Its lofty strains.’*

The Welsh national meeting, entitled Eisteddfod, or session of bards, had its origin in these remote

* ‘ Caractacus ’ (Mason).

times, when the bardic or Druidical institution prevailed in this island in its primitive purity. The most ancient notices on this subject now extant occur in the Triads of Dyvnwal Moelmud, **The Eis-teddfod.** a British lawgiver, who is thought to have lived about three or four centuries before the Christian era. In these early records the meeting in question is minutely described, under the name of



REMAINS OF DRUIDS' TEMPLE, STONEHENGE.

Gorsedd y Beirdd, or Congress of the Bards, and is numbered among the national privileged assemblies of the Cymry. The Gorsedd was not originally confined to the cultivation of music and poetry, but had an ulterior and more important aim in the preservation of bardic traditions, the commemoration of illustrious and praiseworthy deeds, and a general promotion of religious, moral, and scientific instruc-

tion. Among the places in this island which were selected for the occasion, Salisbury Plain is conspicuous, as the stupendous Druidical remains, still to be found there, abundantly testify. Other probable localities were the island of Bardsey, the Hebrides, *i.e.*, $\text{\textAE}bud\mathcal{E}$, or Ovates Islands, from the class of Druids called Eubates or Ovates, who sang the sacred and prophetic hymns.

How long the Gorsedd continued to retain its original constitution and purpose cannot be ascertained with any degree of precision. The wars and intestine feuds, consequent on the successive invasions of the Romans and Saxons, were fatal to the exercise of a practice that was peculiarly founded on principles of national peace and tranquillity. For some centuries, therefore, we are without any particular records of these musical meetings. However, as the ancient Welsh poets have frequent allusions to them, and as the important privileges of the bards are recognised as well by the Saxon writer Bede as by the laws of Howel, or Hywel, compiled two centuries later, we may conclude that the right of holding these harmonious congresses was in these times frequently exercised.

Alawn's fame was long preserved in the locality of Alawr Beirdd in Anglesey, named after him. Concerning Gwron there is scanty account. These 'Fundamental' bards, as they have also been called, are specially honoured, because they secured official

recognition for their order long before the idea was revived in the minstrelsy age. There had been bards like Tydain—Father of the Muse—who first established British vocal tradition into system and order, but hitherto no privilege or distinction was accorded to musicians. Once under the ægis of the government, however, they became a recognised and legally protected body, as did their successors the minstrels.

Little wonder that for several centuries the singer and harpist won the hearts and ears of the natives in all parts of early Britain. Their theme was

British stirring in its note and drift. It told of **Bards**. Tydain, whose tomb was the summit of Bryn Aren in Merionydd ; of Gwyddon Guabebon, 'the first in the world to make vocal song'—as their tremendous faith had it ; of Hû, surnamed the Mighty, whose fame spread over the island of Iona, and was not forgotten as long afterwards as the time of St. Columba, Apostle of the Picts, in the sixth century—all illustrious Cambrians, 'ministers of song,' and conservators of traditions as loved of the natives as the true soil on which they stood erect.

The warriors of the island, too, had their deeds sung thus early. There was Gwrgan Varvdrwch—the Bushy-bearded Songster—not less renowned in music than in war, a reputed British king, who flourished some 375 years B.C., and is credited to have founded the city of Cambridge, where he and his son Gwythelin set up their regal seat ; also

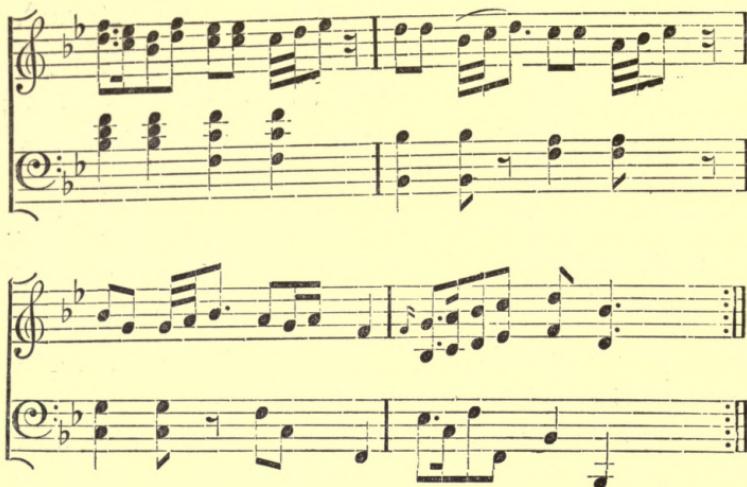
Cubelyn, twenty-third King of Britain (348 B.C.), whose skill in music Caius celebrated; Blegywryd, King of Britain 190 years B.C., who excelled all that lived before him both as a singer and musical performer; Eidiol Gleddyfeud, or Ruddy Sword—another warrior bard and arch-druid, whose nickname, 'Ruddy Sword,' refers probably to his duties at the sacrifices offered to the gods; the Emperor Manogan, 120 B.C., called also the Man of Joy, or Musician; Beli the Great, and several more—desperate foemen when disputing an inch of soil, albeit peaceful enough in unmolested enjoyment of their home pursuits. Among these music stood out beyond all else.

In many directions there was a call for music—not a too refined art, perhaps, but one born of splendid barbarism—among these sharers of grand heroic days and ages which history recounteth not. The pathetic nature of such earliest native music may be gauged by the following melodies which tradition ascribes to the ancient British :

MWYNEN GWYNEDD.

(The Sweet Melody of North Wales.)





It is difficult to fix the date of the following tune, but it is believed to allude to the departure of King Cadwaladr when a plague and famine raged in his dominion. He sailed to Britany to his cousin Alan about the year 665 A.D. It possesses all the character, however, of the early British music :

YMDAWI AD Y BRENHIN.

(The Departure of the King.)



The musical score consists of four staves of music. The top two staves are for the harp, and the bottom two are for the voice. The music is in common time. Various dynamics and performance instructions are included, such as 'tr' (trill) and 'p' (piano). The harp part features sustained notes and rhythmic patterns, while the voice part includes melodic lines and sustained notes.

There was much for bardic song-men to do in an age when men depended upon the memory for the preservation of fact. Pedigrees and items of genealogy had to be told by the bards, who accompanied on the harp all that they narrated : the division of lands required to be known and confirmed ; the

praises of benefactors were to be sung ; national matters needed to be reduced to an almanack form ; the herald of the palace was expected to inform his King and chiefs of events of note, past and present, while ovates had to divine and augur. All this fell to the share of these poet-musicians, who sang their records, and accompanied them on an instrument.

We know that the order of the bards was a prominent feature in the British administrative system. Such a natural element, together with the enduring vitality of an art-growth which had been begotten of Britons themselves, which was, in fact, born of the very soil of Britain, will easily account for the hold which the native music continued to have on the Britons long after the inroads of the Saxons and the introduction of their barbarous music—such as the first sample undoubtedly was. The Briton clung to his own tune, preferring its pathetic tone and interval—the independent style and beauty of which have been mentioned—to anything the foreigners brought with them. He scorned the music of the intruder as disdainfully as he did his intrepidity and daring.

Prominent among the oft-mentioned British bards in the period we are considering is Aneurin, son of Câw. Chief of the Gododinians, he was surnamed King of the Bards, and flourished about 510 A.D. He also was one of the three Golden Torque bards, whose necks were adorned with gold chains

—symbols of honour, and denoting high proficiency in the art. Two others who enjoyed this proud distinction were Prince Llywarch Hen—ruler of Cumbria (580 A.D.)—and Brenin Penbeirdd. Brenin the natives surnamed King Supreme of the Bards, for he was the most renowned player on the harp then known. At about this same time appears Gwrhir, who was bard to Teilaw, Bishop of Llandaff

514 A.D.

With Brenin Penbeirdd we get a glimpse of bardic usage. In his time the custom was to sit under the oak and decide relatively the bards of

Bardic every degree. This took place annually.

Usage. Three orders of singers and musicians were adjudged to be preferable, and of an exalted class. These were the harper, because he praised God on a stringed instrument; the ode bard, because he praised God in vocal songs; and the heraldic bard, who praised the Deity and preserved in song and verse the memorable actions of warriors, and all excellencies, personal and national, worthy of commendation for the good of the world. The establishment of Prince Vortigern—Prince of the Demetæ tribe in the middle of the fifth century—included a retinue of twelve principal bards. On a certain occasion he found it necessary to consult them and to gather information which they should have supplied. Subsequently the King found out that he had been deceived by his bards, whereupon he had them put

to death, either to satisfy his personal vexation, or to exact the penalty of the law, which forbade the bards from subverting the truth in whatever they sang or related.

At times the King himself was a bard, so highly was music long regarded in our country. One such was Talhain Tad Awen (540 A.D.), of Llanvair Talhain in Denbighshire. Owain, Prince of Reged in the sixth century, and whose tomb at Llan-Morvael the 'memorials' say was 'girt with four stones,' was another. Then there was Arthur, of Round Table renown, crowned Emperor of Britain by Archbishop Dubritius at Caerleon-on-Usk.

'Emperor and leader of the toil of war,'

Llywarch Hen sings, when recounting his prowess and the daring of Geraint ab Erbin, Admiral of the British fleet, who, with King Arthur, drove the

King Arthur. Saxons from our shores (530 A.D.). Arthur could tune the harp with cunning hand, and through his hall the strains of music favoured many a knight and chief. Under the system of the Druids there were three musicians who, it appears, filled the high office of 'imperial performers on the harp.' King Arthur was one of these, the others contemporary with him being one Crella, and Glewlwyd Gavaelvawr, or 'Brave Gray with Powerful Grasp,' who was Master of the Ceremonies in King Arthur's palace, and one of his knights. With one more

enumeration from the long list of famous British bards, and this of a period as far off as 640 A.D., we are made acquainted with the 'three bloody-speared bards of Britain,' though why they should rejoice under such a distinction is not recorded. Their names were Taliesin, head of the bards ; Avan Verddig, bard to King Cadwallon, the son of Cadvan, King of North Wales ; and Aneurin—perchance a descendant of that Aneurin already mentioned, who was styled the King of the Bards.

Such were the men who sang and wept over the departing ancient song and harmony of Britain. Eye-witnesses of goodlier times, memory and tradition alike revived in their breasts story and tone which made them hate their new enemies even more bitterly than they did the Romans. They were not likely to be willingly affected by the manners and customs of the invaders, rapidly as these were thrusting themselves upon the country by reason of the constant ingress of Saxons. This exclusiveness was purposely studied, and to it must be attributed the slow decay of British music; for we must remember that the early music and native harmonious methods remained long after the arrival of Saxons, Danes, and Normans.

Very similar to the British bards in their habits and occupation were the Saxon scóps or scalds. In England the scóp became the Anglo-Saxon scald—a word which denotes a smoother or polisher of language.

The origin of the art of the scóp or scald was attributed to Odin or Wodin, the father of the Saxon gods, and the professors of it, like the **Saxon Scalds**. ancient British bards, were held by the Saxons in the highest esteem. Their skill was considered as something divine; their persons were accounted sacred; their companionship was required by kings; while they were everywhere loaded with honours and rewards.

When the Saxons turned from the forests of Angle-land it was not, as we have seen, to leave all their social habits and customs behind. Many were brought with them into England, and contributed to make musical Britain what it now is. The scóp and gleeman, for instance, made the minstrel of Norman and later times, and of the minstrel was eventually begotten the ballad-singer and concert-room vocalist of the past and to-day. The scóp invented and often also recited; the gleeman recited and otherwise provided entertainment as musician, and rope-dancer.

Widsith was a scóp of the fourth century, attached to the Court of Queen Ealhild, among the Myrgings by the Elbe. He, like most scóps, could sing loudly in praise of his benefactors, and still more loudly concerning his own virtues and talents:

‘Therefore I can sing
And tell a tale, recount in the Mead Hall
How men of high race gave rich gifts to me.’

‘A circlet given to me by Guthhere,
A welcome treasure for reward of song.
That was no tardy king.’

‘And I was
With Eormanric, and all the while the King
Of Goths was good to me. Chief in his burgh,
A collar of six hundred sceats of gold—
Beaten gold—counted in coin, he gave me.’

‘When I and Skilling for our conquering lord
With clear voice raised the song, loud to the harp,
The sound was music; many a stately man,
Who well knew what was right, then said in words
That never had they heard a happier song.’

The success of the scóp depended wholly upon his power to please. He struck the glee-beam, as the rude harp was called, in the halls of the great chiefs, whose deeds were shaped into triumphant song, wherein enemies figured as monsters, while the chiefs were praised as little else than gods. Sometimes the scóp’s own genius failed him—perhaps in composing, playing, or singing. Then, to hold his ground, he would associate himself with a comrade who supplied the deficiency, for it was a disgrace to be supplanted in the favour of a chief.

The scóp Deor was so displaced, and his ‘Lament’ shows him a miserable wanderer—though not altogether without hope: ‘I had a good following, a faithful lord, for many winters; until that now Heorrenda, a song-crafty man, has obtained the landright, which the refuge of warriors gave to me before.’

Whether called scóp or scald, they were generally poets and musicians combined, whose main employment was to celebrate the deeds of the brave and great in heroic poems, sung to the accompaniment of the harp or lyre, just as did the British bard. Each rich and powerful chief brought with him his native bard, whose duty was to transmit history and to shape the lay or ballad recounting the valorous deeds dear to the ears of the noble. The Teuton bard was indeed little inferior to the Celtic. The people respected and welcomed him wherever he went, just as the British did their bards, for they loved to hear such narratives as the scalds told, and the recounting of deeds of courage and daring incited them to heights of great ambition and valorous desire. The King and Prince even constituted the Bard the eighth officer in dignity at his Court.

Their order, divided into four classes, consisted of the most distinguished musicians, outside which was a lesser order of itinerant musicians and performers, from which probably later musical oddmen and merry-makers sprung. Among so jovial a race, it is not surprising that amusement-makers multiplied apace. Itinerant performers, musicians of all kinds, and buffoons, increased amazingly, and for many subsequent generations they plied their calling at all early English fairs and gatherings, where music, song, and dance would be sure to please.

One such wandering musician was Cynewulf (720-

800), especially famed in Northumbria. The songs and music of these Saxon musicians were extremely affecting, and productive frequently of great good in quelling quarrels and preventing bloodshed. At times when the armies of rival princes were about to engage in furious combat, the bards rushed in between them, and engaged in playing subdued strains. Then the contending forces, with their fury softened by the music, and respecting the bards, desisted and submitted to be dispersed without loss of honour.

Taliesin was a Welsh bard, who flourished about 550 A.D. He sang in the time of King **Taliesin**. Maelgwn Gwynedd, but he was originally patronized by Elphin, son of Urien.

An interesting story has come down of this King Maelgwn, showing something of the struggle for supremacy in musical contests even in those far-off days. Maelgwn (or, as others say, his father Casswallon) went to judge between the poets and the musicians, and caused the poets and harpers to swim the river Conway. The harpers and *crwthers'* instruments were spoiled, whereby the poets, whose tools could not be destroyed, won the competition. There was some humour here, probably. Music and poetry were often ranked as separate professions, and at the public contests of skill the musicians invariably carried off the prize. Maelgwn, by way of encouraging the poets, adopted the ruse, so that

the poets, who had some ground to recover, might get on a level with the estimate entertained of the musicians. Taliesin, with other British bards, kept the old national musical spirit alive during the troublous Saxon period in which he lived. His vocal song was framed upon five, out of some twenty-four, metres which the native bards used, and these were denominated the five pillars or canons of poetry. Among his odes is 'Cunobline's Incantation,' wherein occur repeated and appreciative references to music, remarks which show clearly that it was only necessary to remind the people of their musical traditions and excellence to inspire them with all the fire and enthusiasm which the art could provoke.

'The king of the land of harmony,
Mine is the lot to lament him.'

Such is the prevailing note of Taliesin's productions, and probably of all those bardic compositions which have become lost. Their object was to insure success to the heroes in their day of battle, and the recitation of the odes was held to be productive of a protective charm—a mystic efficacy from the Gorchanan—to the body :

'The guardian spell of Cynvelyn,
On the plains of Gododin,
Shall it not prevail over Odyn ?'

The tone of this expression shows that the spirit of enmity against the Saxon was far from crushed in

the Briton as he was met in Taliesin. Another extract from a poem* of a battle supposed to have been fought in the Vale of Garant, is suggestive of music being employed in Taliesin's day in much the same way as it is used in modern warfare.

‘The sons of slaughter the reeking plain will leave,
When the string of harmony resounds.’

Taliesin mentions, too, the hunting-horns, which were the common accompaniment to the person. This occurs in ‘The Salutation’ poem, wherein Taliesin is welcoming Ugnach, a celebrated bard :

‘Thou knight that goest towards the city,
With white dogs and large hunting-horns.’

The *Leges Wallicæ*, or Welsh Laws, throw much light on Saxon habits and customs, especially concerning the bards. The laws were framed by Howel

Leges Wallicæ, or Welsh Bardic Laws. Dha, or Howel the Good, King of the Welsh (915-948 A.D.), one who, as a chronicler says, ‘was greatly loved by every Welshman, and by the wise among the Saxons.’ Besides his qualities of ability and learning he was a devoted lover of music. At his Court every wandering bard found a home as long as it pleased him to remain, while a talented musician was permanently attached to the palace. Another

* The original Welsh of this British relic is found in one of the oldest Welsh manuscripts—the Black Book of Caermarthen (Y Llyfe dû o Gaerfyrddin)—in the eighth century handwriting, on goat-skin.

musical Prince Howel, son of Prince Owain Gwynedd, one of the ancient British Bardic Kings, is recorded. The latter is supposed to have flourished about 1140, having for a contemporary Owain Cyveillio, Prince of Powis, also a British Bardic King.

From these Welsh Laws we gather much interesting information relating to musical procedure of the Saxon period. The *Bardd Teulu*, or Bard of the Palace, was, in rank, the eighth officer of the King's household; he was also one of the royal guests, and sat at his table, next to the Heir Apparent. On his appointment the bard received a harp from the King and a golden ring from the Queen. He won his claim to pre-eminence by his superior merit in the science of music and poetry at one of the British Olympics. The King found him his woollen apparel and a horse, and the Queen gave him his linen apparel. His lodging was in the house of the Heir Apparent (who was the controller of the household), and on three great festivals in the year it was the office of the prince to deliver the harp into the hands of the bard when about to perform, for which service he was entitled to a song (or a tune) from the bard whenever he chose. When the royal family desired a song in the great hall, the *Bardd-Cadeiriawg*, or Chaired Bard, had first to sing a hymn in praise of God, and another in honour of the King, and of the most worthy of his ancestors and their exploits. When these were over the bard of

the palace was to sing next upon some other subject, in the lower part of the hall ; and if the Queen desired to have music after she returned from the table to her apartment, he was then to perform three tender and eloquent songs or pathetic tunes, different from those which he had played in the hall. The bard accompanied the army when it marched on a warlike expedition into an enemy's country ; and when the soldiers were preparing for battle he recited and performed to them the animating song called 'Unbeniaerth Prydain,' or, the 'Monarchy of Britain,' to remind them of their ancient right, in praise of their brave ancestors, and to inspire them to heroism. For this service he was rewarded with one of the most valuable things of the plunder. If he went with other bards upon a musical peregrination he was entitled to a double portion for his share. He held his land free. If the bard desired any favour of the King, he was to perform to him one of his own compositions ; if of a nobleman, he was to perform to him three ; and if of a plebeian he was to set him to sleep. Whoever slightly injured the bard was fined six cows, and a hundred and twenty pence ; and whoever slew a bard was fined a hundred and twenty-six cows. Five bards formed part of the King's retinue when he rode in state.

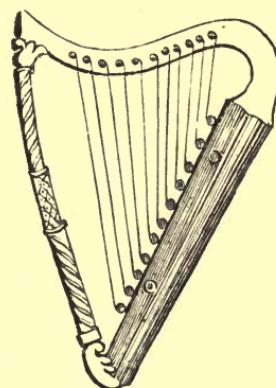
The *Pencerdd*, or *Cadeir-fardd*, the Head of Song or Chaired Bard, was one who had gained pre-eminence in a musical and poetical contest, in an

Eisteddfod, or Session of the Bards, held triennially in the royal palace or in the hall of the lord. This solemnity was decided by the venerable judge of the palace, and as a reward he received from the victorious bard a bugle-horn, a gold ring, and a cushion for his chair of dignity. This Chaired Bard, according to Howel's Laws, was the bard of a district, or county, and chief president of music and poetry within that precinct, and in him was vested the control of all the other bards within that jurisdiction. He was also a bardic teacher, and at stated periods he prepared students to take their degrees, which were ratified by the Sessions of the Bards every third year ; and he also regulated and assigned to each of the other bards their *clera* circuits within his district. This *Pencerdd Gwlad*, or head bard of the district, had his lands free ; his perquisites arose from his scholars, and he was also entitled to a fee from every bride, and the *Amobr*, or marriage fine of the daughters of all the inferior bards within his district. He sat in the tenth place in the royal hall. His privilege of protection lasted from the beginning of his first song in the hall of the palace to the conclusion of the last. Every *Pencerdd*, or chief bard, to whom the lord assigned privileges was supplied with musical instruments—that is, a harp to one, a crwth to another, and pipes to the third ; and when the bards died such instruments reverted to the lord or his successor.

Secular music, apart from the art of the bard, begins to stand out as an item of polite education with King Alfred's reign. The harp is constantly

Secular Music in King Alfred's Reign. being noticed as an adjunct to all secular music ; indeed, it was the national instrument—taking precedence among the

Saxons over the psaltry, fithele, and the 'pip,' or pipe—just as it was with the Britons, who styled it, however, the crwth, or teglin. It was one of the three things that were necessary to constitute a gentleman or freeman, and none could pretend to that character who had not one of these favourite instruments, and could, besides, play upon it. To prevent slaves from pretending to be gentlemen it was expressly forbidden to teach, or to permit them to play upon the harp ; and none but the King, the King's musicians, and gentlemen, were allowed to have harps in their possession. A gentleman's harp was not liable to be seized for debt, because the want of it would have degraded him from his rank, and reduced him to that of a slave.* That it was an



HARP OF THE NINTH CENTURY.

(From MS. of St. Blaise.)

* Distinction is made of three orders of harps—the harp of the King, the harp of the chief bard or laureate, and the harp of a gentleman.

instrument common also among the Saxons before their settlement here, however, may be seen in the Anglo-Saxon words *hearpe* and *hearpa*, which are not derived from the British nor any Celtic language, but are the genuine Gothic originals. The word 'glee,' Anglo-Saxon *gligg*, it may be added, is another instance of a Saxon radix from which a variety of musical terms and phrases spring, thus affording strong evidence that the Saxons were a people who brought musical materials into this country.

Alfred in one of his translations furnishes us with a clue to the mode of playing the harp, *i.e.*, whether with the naked finger or a plectrum—a rather moot point. Burney instances the matter. 'Alfred,' says the historian, 'translates the Latin word *plectrum* into *hearp-nægel* (Saxon), by which it would seem that the harp, in the time of this royal musician, was played, like the ancient lyre, with a *plectrum*. Nægel is likewise Saxon for a nail of the finger or toe.'

No writers of the period make reference to the manufacture of these harps among other instruments—matters of this nature having altogether slipped their attention—and whether it was a separate calling, or whether the harper, Briton, Saxon or Scandinavian, constructed his own instrument, does not transpire. It is probable that he did, since all the materials were close at hand, and his skill as a harper would guide him in making exactly the class

and style of instrument that he required. There were no imports of musical instruments in such early times, and Celt and Teuton were thrown much upon their own resources in such matters, leaving it quite feasible, as has been explained, for even the ancient Britons to have possessed much more in the way of instrumental material than is commonly credited to them. At the same time there is, it must be admitted, something incongruous in the performer having first to construct his instrument, especially if we reflect upon what the possible consequences would be if present-day violin, harp and pianoforte *virtuosi* had to go through such an experience before getting anything to play upon!

But whether under the name of scóp, gleeman, or scald, the ancient musician or bard, as he existed among the pagan northmen, declined in time, and with the sweeping changes in England, especially at the Norman Conquest, gave place to a new musician.

When the Saxons had thoroughly settled here as Englishmen, the old poet-musician of their German home became two persons, viz., poet and musician. The former was a man of letters--a poet as we



PERFORMER ON THREE-STRINGED CROUT.

understand the term now. The latter was one who gained his livelihood by singing verses to the harp, principally at the houses of the great, whereat he and his companions were welcomed and hospitably treated, just as the scóps or scalds had been before them.

PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES.

'Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.'		
'History of the Anglo-Saxons'	-	Sharon Turner.
'Music of the Anglo-Saxons'	-	Wackerbarth.
'History of England'	-	Lingard.
'English Writers'	-	Morley.
'Dictionary of Music and Musicians'		Grove.
'History of Music'	-	Burney.
'Popular Music of the Olden Time'	-	Chappell.
'Reliques of Ancient English Poetry'		Percy.
'Beowulf'	-	
'Chronicles'	-	Ingulph.
' <i>Historia Ecclesiastica</i> '	-	Bede.
'Early English Church History'	-	Bright.
'Essays on English Church Music'	-	Mason.

CHAPTER IV.

AUGUSTINE AND HIS MUSICAL WORK.

The Coming of Augustine—Scene at Thanet—Ambrosian *versus* Gregorian Church Music—Gregory—Instruments in the early Church Services—Repairing the Churches—Notable Abbeys—Monastic Musical Establishments—A Magnificent Dedication Service—Saxon Musical Instruments—The Cotton MSS. References to Instruments—String and Percussion—The Organ—The Psaltery—The Viola—Drums and Cymbals—The *Sambuca-Canticum*—Aldhelm and the Trumpet—Tuning in Chords.

HERE we reach a great situation—one no less momentous than the introduction of the Roman Church service and teaching into England. The event, as we all know, was to prove pregnant with tremendous issues in the future social, political, and religious history of our country.

The upraising of Christ's Cross in England by Augustine (died 605 A.D.)—an event which has been

The Coming of Augustine. hinted at in the previous chapter—was the signal for a fresh outburst of sincere musical emotion. The old British Church services had all but died out in the distrac-

tions of years of war and bloodshed with pagans, so that there were few altars left whereat sacred music was poured forth. Withal there was to be a glorious revival. At the spot where the Roman missionary and his band landed with their Gospel of Peace, and wherever they went, there arose for the first time in this country the glorious strains of chants and melodies of the Roman Church which are to be heard in so many of the churches of Great Britain to-day where Gregorian music is used.

Pope Gregory (*c.* 550-604 A.D.), moved to extend Christianity into England, charged Augustine, a Roman Abbot, with the mission. He selected forty missionaries, and one day took his departure from the Benedictine monastery of St. Andrew's on the Cœlian Hill. The journey from Rome to England in those days was a serious undertaking, but after surmounting many difficulties these Gospel messengers reached the favourable coast of Kent. Augustine chose this as his landing-place, conscious, no doubt, that Ethelbert, the King, though himself a worshipper of Odin, had not long before married a French Princess who was a Christian. The flat and marshy coast of Thanet afforded a good landing-stage, and, what was more, was nigh to Canterbury, the city for which they were bound. From this place the Primate of All England has since taken his title, while in its Cathedral a service of prayer and praise has daily ascended

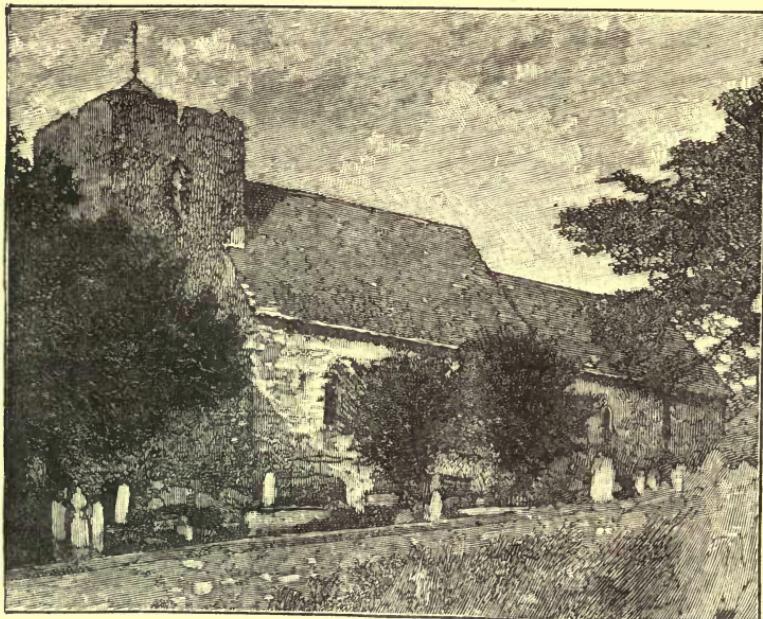
for hundreds of years with scarcely a single interruption.

A safe landing being effected (597), saintly Augustine, a man of great stature, at the head of his band of faithful monks marched to the meeting-place, heralded by a procession bearing a silver cross, with a picture of the crucified Christ, and singing a Litany and a jubilant Alleluia. That solemn Litany was the precursor of many a glorious pæan of sacred harmony which has rung in our church roofs for these centuries after.

Every detail befitted the occasion. The canopy of heaven afforded roof to the actors in this historical scene. Ethelbert, King of the Jutes in Kent, seated under an oak, was surrounded by his chiefs and body-guard; and the spectacle must, indeed, have been an impressive one, as the Christian missionary, with his train of monks, paced the green-sward to take the 'yea' or 'nay' of the regal pagan.

The sacred music—probably a special Canticle or Psalm, since we learn that it was sung antiphonally to a Gregorian Tone—touched the heart of the King, who gave permission that Christianity might be preached in his dominions. The answer was received joyfully. A Benediction was given, the procession turned, and with sure step, to the accompaniment of holy songs, these messengers of peace were soon treading the dust of the quiet city of Canterbury.

Here good Queen Bertha had provided for the missionaries a house adjoining the Church of St. Martin, on the hill to the east of the city, where anciently had been a British church, and where a Christian altar stood. To this church Augustine



CHURCH OF ST. MARTIN, ON THE HILL.

'dayly went to syng service, say Masses, pray, preache and christen.'

Thus was Pope Gregory's wish, as he beheld the British slave-children in the Roman market-place, consummated :

'Subjects of Saxon *Ælla*, they shall sing,
Glad *Hallelujahs* to the eternal King.'

WORDSWORTH.

Few are unfamiliar with that beautiful story and Gregory's resolve on meeting the golden-haired children from Deira. 'What is the name of the kinge of that province?' asked Gregory. 'When it was answered that his name was *Ælla*, "Alleluia," sayde he, "must be *sounge* in that Prince's dominions to the prayse of Almighty God his Creator."'* Gregory, it will be noticed, used the word 'sung' and not 'said.'

Thus the coming of Augustine marked a new era in Church music—an awakening, as it were, into the early morning light of a glorious new-born day.

The style of chanting ordered by Ambrose (340-397 A.D.) for use in the churches had, in the course of years, lost its stately simplicity, and was neglected

**Ambro-
sian
Church
Music.** for an ecclesiastical music of a more gay and florid style—produced by an amalgamation of pagan theatrical music with the Ambrosian chant. This deteriorated art-form had found its way into England, and was adopted in the few scattered churches where the old British services were continued during the Saxon invasions; but, unhappily, at this period a greater evil existed in the almost total neglect of the Christian worship throughout the land. So, practically, before Augustine there lay the work of re-conversion, and in this task sacred music was to prove a sure and powerful agent.

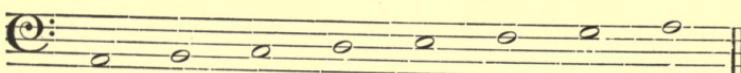
* Bede (Thomas Stapleton's translation).

Born about the year 550 A.D., Gregory, whose system Augustine adopted, had done much for music at Rome, establishing there a singing-school, **Gregory.** whereat Church music could be taught, which flourished for full three hundred years after his death (A.D. 604).

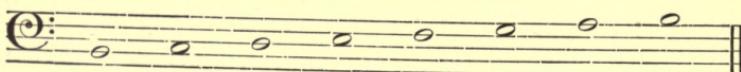
It would appear that the juvenile choristers were little better behaved then than they frequently are now, for the harmonious rudiments had betimes to be instilled with the aid of a mild corrective ; and long after Gregory's time visitors used to be shown the whip for the choristers, and the couch on which Gregory reposed when staying at the school. His reformed system of Church music included only such chants and melodies as the first Fathers of the Church had approved. While Ambrose, as we have seen, used four scales, called the 'Authentic' modes, Gregory introduced four more, known as 'Plagal' or relative scales, thus increasing the Ecclesiastical Modes to eight.

GREGORY'S PLAGAL MODES.

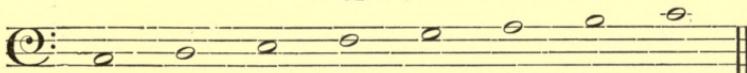
First Tone: Hypo-Dorian or Eolian.



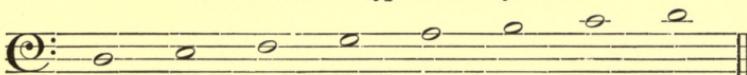
Second Tone: Hypo-Phrygian.



Third Tone: Hypo-Lydian or Ionian.



Fourth Tone: Hypo-Mixo-Lydian.



The latter he constructed by prefacing each original scale with its last four tones—*e.g.*, in the first scale (D—D) the four final tones are A, B, C, D; these he placed an octave lower, at the same time putting them before the initial note of the scale, *viz.*, D. The new scale thus formed ranged from A to A, and the whole eight scales, *i.e.*, the four Authentic and the four Plagal, were then called Church Modes. Written in present-day notation they are as follows :

Dorian.

Hypo-Dorian.

Phrygian.

Hypo-Phrygian.

Lydian.

Hypo-Lydian.

Mixo-Lydian.

Hypo-Mixo-Lydian.

It will be noticed that the initial note of the Authentic scale becomes the fourth note of the Plagal scale. Upon these Gregory built the melodies or 'tones' which have ever since been associated with his name.

THE EIGHT GREGORIAN TONES.

First Tone.

Dixit Dominus Domino me - o, Se-de a dextris me - is.

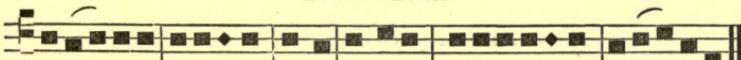
Second Tone.

Can - ta - te Domino canticum novum, cantate Domino omnis terra.

Third Tone.

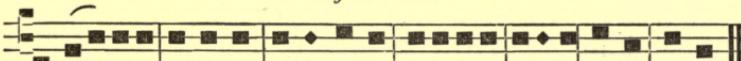
Dominus regnavit ex-ul-tet terra, lætentur in - su-læ mul - tæ.

Fourth Tone.



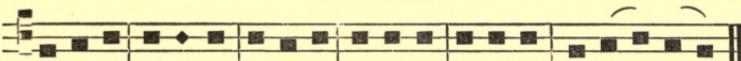
Qui confidunt in Domino sicut mons Sion, non commovebitur in e-ternum.

Fifth Tone.



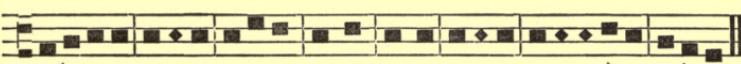
E-ruc-ta-vit cor meum verbum bonum, di-co e-go o-pe-ra me-a re-gi.

Sixth Tone.



Laudate Dominum de coe-lis, lau-da-te e-um in ex - cel - sis.

Seventh Tone.



Le-va-vi oculos meos in monte, unde ve-ni-et aux-i-li - um mi - hi.

Eighth Tone.



In ex-i-tu Is-ra-el de Egypto, domus Jacob de po-pu-lo bar-ba - ro.

These tones, arranged to the hymns, canticles, psalms, and other parts of the Liturgy, Augustine brought with him to England; and from that day to this they have been used more or less in English churches, whether under Roman or Protestant rule. All had to sing the *canto fermo*, or fixed melody, and improvisings in the shape of harmonial adornments were strictly forbidden. This was to distinguish Gregorian from that florid style of music which had crept into the religious services. The

square and lozenge-shaped notes, familiar in present-day Gregorian music, if not actually invented by this Church musician, were at an early period applied to his chants, and came to England through Augustine. The Gregorian era, therefore, may be regarded as a distinctly second epoch in English Church music history.

That instrumental music soon followed upon Augustine's exertions in the cause of Church music in England—if, indeed, such accompaniments to

Instru- singing were not in use much earlier in
ments in the British Church services—is by no means
the **Church.** unlikely. With the example of David and the Temple musical system before them, the Fathers of the Church encouraged instruments as well as



CITHARA.

singing in the services. 'If you accompany your voices with the lyre or cithara,' said Clemens Alexandrinus, in the second century, 'you will incur no censure.' Augustine urged the 'singing of the psalms to the accompaniment of the lyre or psaltery,' from which it is evident that boisterous instruments like cymbals and dulcimers were eschewed for the sweeter

and more chaste accompaniments of the lyre and harp. No testimony can be adduced, however, proving the use of instruments, suitable or otherwise, at this early stage of ecclesiastical music in England,

when, the glories of the ancient British Church having departed, the missionaries from Rome may well have contented themselves with such variety as was afforded by the plain, simple singing of the chants in unison by choir and congregation alternately.

What the old Britons and Anglo-Saxons thought of the first Roman Church music is unrecorded, but that it was received with favour may be easily imagined if we consider its rapid spread over the island, as new churches took the places of those destroyed by the Saxons. The ravages of the Teuton had proved disastrous indeed to the ancient British Church, and so fierce was the enmity between Briton and Saxon, that advances from the British clergy towards a reconciliation availed but little. What with the paganism of the invaders and the native inclination towards the Druidical teachings in all remote parts of the island, the Christian clergy were sore put to it. It was to heal the breach between the natives and their invaders, and to preach Christianity to these Saxons, that Augustine was sent from Rome :

‘ For Christe’s love and His Apostles twelve
He taught, but first he followed it him selve.’

CHAUCER.

Wherever Augustine or his followers had founded churches—and they sprang up with rapidity—there was the Grégorian chant and model Roman service

adopted. It may be that the people longed for some such sustaining art as the Roman missionaries brought with them. The old Church ^{Spread of} **Gregorian** ^{Music.} music had been all but annihilated, cast to the winds, stamped out. Successive periods of fire and sword visitations had consumed every remnant of the past British Church service, whatever its form. Little wonder, then, that native and Saxon eventually alike drained eagerly at the new fount which Pope Gregory's messengers brought with them. Rude ears, if not others, would listen attentively to that which was chanted by the monks with much dramatic energy.

After all the destruction and burning, slaughter and bloodshed attending the Teuton invasion of Britain, there came a lull. The havoc had been awful and complete ; but as the ravenous wolf lifts its teeth from its prey to pant awhile, so the ferocity of the Saxon at length slackened. He cast his eyes to heaven from sheer satiety of despoil, yet to him it was nought but a bewildering blank, and his faith in the gods of his country was beginning to falter. It is terrible to contemplate what the native Church and the clergy must have passed through during the slow but certain occupation by the Saxons ; but it is a relief to reflect over the quiet yet successful work that went on. While conquering, the invaders were being conquered, so that a wonderful change was ere long to come over the land. The predatory Saxons,

who for generations had been fighting their way into England, were no sooner safely located here than they dropped their profession of sea piracy and became permanently at home. It is surprising how they took to the soil, cultivating it, and erecting dwellings after the fashion of the peoples and lands which they had renounced. Every favourable season also brought fresh bands of these English—each generation better than its predecessor, and fully ready for such a beneficial and grateful aid as music, whether sacred or secular.

Now did both Britons and Saxons consort to repair the devastation of the past. The churches were the first to receive attention—and many were built of both wood and stone—for from **Repairing the Churches.** the clergy the training of the people in religious and secular teachings could alone come. With marvellous industry, stately minsters and abbeys were here and there erected on old church sites, and matin bell and sacred choral chant once more lent themselves to the efforts of the clergy in dispelling the heathen darkness inherent in the Saxons, and the majority also of the Britons. At this period churches were erected at Winchester, Lindisfarne and Ely. Bangor, Croyland and Sherborne, Axminster, Huntingdon, Repton, Wareham and Coldingham, also had churches, many of which, unhappily, were to suffer subsequently from the scourge of the Danes and Scandinavians. Much

attention was bestowed once again upon music employed in the religious services, secular music being left to the minds and imaginations of those who could snatch opportunity to practise it. That there was not a little secular music remaining in the country among the descendants and families of bards would be only natural, although its cultivation and practice does not appear to have been enjoined upon the people by the clergy, probably because of the pernicious results which had followed from much of the music which the Saxons had introduced. The real musical teachings, therefore, sprang wholly from the Church, and to it we owe indisputably whatever advance our country made in musical art during the stormy Saxon period.

We need not detail the services, arrangements and working of these monastic musical establishments, for such, indeed, they largely were; but that they

**Monastic
Musical
Houses.**

flourished often on a large and splendid scale is certain. When Edilfrid (616 A.D.), King of Deira, for example, fought against Cadvan, King of North Wales, at Chester, he espied on the summit of a neighbouring hill a vast unarmed crowd praying. These were the monks of Bangor. 'If they pray,' exclaimed the pagan, 'they fight against us.' He then ordered them to be put to the sword. It suggests something of the ecclesiastical condition and promise of the country, too, when we find such grand spectacles surrounding the cere-

mony of church dedications as that at the opening of Winchelcomb Church, of which we have historical data. Cenwulf (796-819 A.D.), King of Mercia, had built this edifice with royal magnificence, and upon the occasion of its consecration there were present two Kings, thirteen Bishops, ten Ealdermen, and an 'immense concourse of people.' The musical features in this dedicatory service have not come down to us, and whether it consisted of the Gallican or Roman Church music is uncertain—most likely it was the Roman, for Augustine's labours had borne much fruit already ; but that music in a large degree was present only the most sceptical will doubt. Such an assembly could scarcely have participated in that spectacle and have remained dumb. An entirely spoken service, too, can hardly be thought of on an auspicious occasion when the church was thronged with worshippers, the chancel with monks, and a long retinue of officiating Prelates and clergy, which the Roman ritual permitted.

The information we have respecting musical instruments of this period affords a clue to the possibility of something of an orchestrally accom-

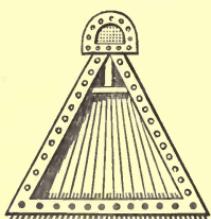
Saxon Musical Instruments. panied service, it being probable that the fullest and best vocal and instrumental resources would be employed in the religious services. It is to Bede that we are indebted for much evidence relating to musical instruments in use here during the Saxon period. He is careful

to draw a distinction between the greatest of all instruments—the human voice—and other sound-giving agents. Thus, in contradistinction to the voice he styles them 'artificial' instruments. These included the organ, the psaltery, the viol, drums and cymbals, the canticum, the triangular harp—not

unlike the nablium of the Phoenicians—etc., about the existence and use of some of which, however, there has grown up much difference of opinion. The organ is often called into question, both as to its introduction into England and its construction. The former

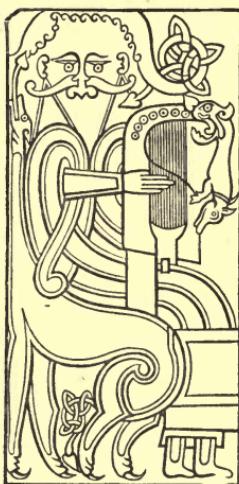
point we shall treat of in the next chapter. As to their make, some writers assert that all early organs had keys some inches wide, and were played upon, like carillons, with a blow of the fist.* Others state that the Anglo-Saxon organ had not only a register of stops, but that it was furnished with the semitones.

* Hence, perhaps, the term 'organ-blower,' as Purcell is most discordantly styled in the records kept by the Dean and Chapter of Westminster. The same term is also used in the vestry-books of St. Andrew's Church, Holborn. A Greek enigmatical epigram, in which the riddle to be solved is the organ, and commencing, 'Αλλοιην ὄρον 'δονάκων φύσιν ἡπον ἀπ' ἀλλης, attributed to the Emperor Julian, suggests that as early as the middle of the fourth century the organ was played with the fingers; so that it would not have been impossible for a finger organ to have been among the possessions of the Saxons before and after their settlement in Britain.



THE TRIANGULAR
PSALTERY.

The psalterium or psaltery—a sort of harp-lute—belonged apparently to the Anglo-Saxons. The Cotton MSS. in the British Museum contain much valuable matter respecting Anglo-Saxon music, among which is a Latin-Saxon Psalter, with a picture representing David performing on a psaltery, an eleven-stringed instrument. According to Bede, the harp, or cithara, was contrary to the psaltery, since the harp had in its lower part that hollow portion which the psaltery had above. This remark seems to suggest that whereas the psaltery had a belly and sound-board in its upper part, parallel to the strings, like those of the lute or viol, the hollow sound-board of the harp was in its lower limb, at right angles with the plane of the strings. The Anglo-Saxons had two harps—a large instrument standing four feet in height, which was played with the right hand in the treble, and the left hand in the bass; also a smaller instrument held in the left hand, and manipulated with the right. This smaller instrument was of different varieties, such as the nabulum, pennola, corus, etc. They had three or four strings, and were without neck or peg arrangements, to raise or



KING DAVID PLAYING
UPON THE HARP.

*(From an Irish Miniature
of the Eighth Century.)*

lower the pitch of the strings, and since they were carried, and were used chiefly for convivial music, no great art results were probably expected from them. Another stringed instrument was the viol—not unlike our violin, since it had four strings, and was held and played with a bow, just as a fiddle is nowadays. That playing upon this instrument had

reached any perfection among the Anglo-Saxons is extremely improbable, for as recently as Purcell's day (1658-1695) the wonderful properties of the violin had not been fully ascertained. They were all plucked either with the fingers or a plectrum formed of quill or bone.



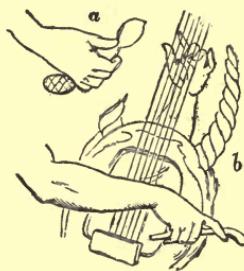
PERFORMER ON A SQUARE PSALTERY OF THE NINTH CENTURY.

Instruments of percussion were the drum (*tympanum*), which Bede describes as 'a tense leather stretched on two cones joined at the acute ends, which resounds on being stricken.' Thus, it was not unlike the present-day drum, having two resounding surfaces; but the modern tonic and dominant tunings were no doubt unknown to the Saxons, who probably disregarded the tones of their drums. 'Anglo-Saxon cymbals [*cymbala*],' says Bede, 'are small vessels composed of mixed metal, which, when stricken together on the concave side,

in skilful time, produce by their delightful collision a very sharp note.' The modern cymbals do no more than this, so that in this detail we are not more advanced than were our far-off ancestors.

The Cotton MSS., so full of interesting early musical data, give particulars of another curious Anglo-Saxon instrument called the sambuca-canticum. It appears to have been a wind and string instrument combined, of long triangular shape, with seven strings in its lower part, and three pipes in the upper end. Possibly the seven strings were attuned to the tones of the natural scale—our diatonic scale. The pipes have sound-holes bored at their sides, but whether they emitted sounds, or were blown into with the lips, can only be matters of conjecture. The instrument, at any rate, testifies to the pertinacity with which our progenitors applied themselves in their quest after music.

Aldhelm, Abbot of Malmesbury, and subsequently Bishop of Sherborne (*circa* 650, died 709), credits the Saxons with the trumpet, referring to it in one of his eight-lined epigrams as a warlike instrument; and he could scarcely be confounding it with the hunting-horn—a sort of trumpet—since that was as



(a, *From a Greek vase in the British Museum*; b, *from a wall-painting at Pompeii*.)

old as the country itself. Instruments of the flute and reed tribes seem to have been unknown.

That they possessed bells also seems clear from the accounts we have of the death of *Æthelwald*, King of England (*circa* 850-905), at whose burial we read 'bells were rung, and Masses sung.' The earliest notice we have of a belfry and a ring of bells is contained in the following: 'Egelric, Abbot of Croyland (died 984) in the time of King Edgar, caused a peal of bells to be made for his abbey, to each of which he gave names. His predecessor, Turketal, had previously led the way in this respect.* The celebrated *Benedictional* of St. *Æthelwold*, in the library of the Duke of Devonshire, furnishes us with an early instance of a belfry with four bells. The illumination, showing the belfry and bells surmounted by chanticleer, appears in the MS. executed at Hyde Abbey about the year 980 A.D.

The Anglo-Saxons were also, it would appear, acquainted with chords long before the tenth century, for, according to Bede, 'a deft harper, in drawing up the cords of his instrument, tunes them to such pitches that the higher may agree in harmony with the lower, some differing by a semitone, a tone, or two tones; others yielding the consonance of the diatessaron, diapente, or diapason'—*i.e.*, the fourth, fifth, and octave.

In the face of all this evidence, it is difficult to think

* 'Ecclesiastical History' (Collier), vol. i., p. 198.

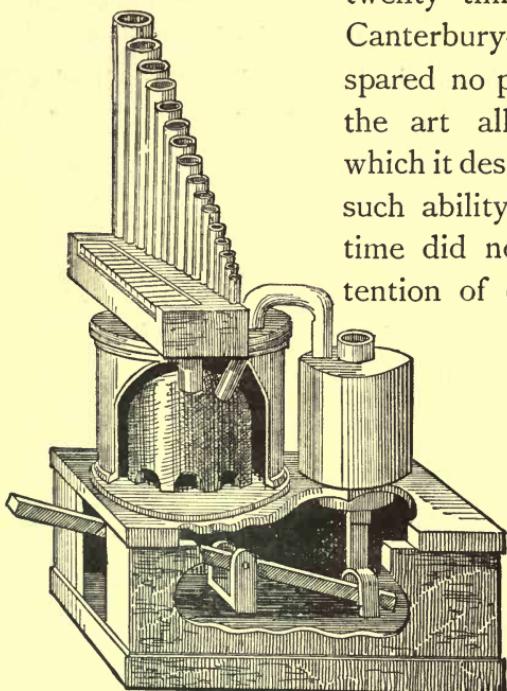
of our English or Saxon forefathers other than as a distinctly musical race provided with appurtenances for a fair musical performance. The absence of wind instruments would leave a hiatus between their string and percussion instruments, which could, however, have been appreciably lessened by the interposition of vocal music. Whether singing was so employed is not known. Some early light has been thrown upon Anglo-Saxon musical performances by writers other than Bede, but these must be left to another chapter.

PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES.

‘Bede’	-	-	-	-	Stapleton.
‘ <i>Historia Ecclesiastica</i> ’	-	-	-	-	Bede.
‘Chronicles’	-	-	-	-	Ingulph.
‘History of the Anglo-Saxons’	-	-	-	-	Turner.
‘Early English Church History’	-	-	-	-	Bright.
‘Saxons in England’	-	-	-	-	Kemble.
‘Music and the Anglo-Saxons’	-	-	-	-	Wackerbarth.
‘English Writers’	-	-	-	-	Morley.
‘Social England’	-	-	-	-	Cassell.
‘Ecclesiastical History’	-	-	-	-	Collier.

In those days music was the highway to ecclesiastical preferment, and Dunstan—soon to be the twenty-third Archbishop of Canterbury—with the monks, spared no pains to obtain for the art all the recognition which it deserved. Unhappily, such ability in music at that time did not escape the attention of calumniators, who regarded his talent in the light of a crime.

Dunstan was accused of magic, and it was urged against him that he had constructed, with the assistance of the devil, a harp



PRIMITIVE ORGAN (HYDRAULIC).*

which not only moved of itself, but played without human help. What he merely did was to invent a

* The Saxon name for a bellows was *bilig*, or *blast-belg*; but the organ-blower was rather a treader of the bellows than a blower by muscular arm-power—the general method nowadays. The bellows-treader, or *balgentreter*, took his stand on the furthermost end or mouth of the bellows, and literally pressed them down by the weight of his body—thus forcing wind into the pipes. This plan superseded the ancient water or hydraulic organ system, and even as recently as the last century the St. Paul's Cathedral organ was

sort of *Æolian harp*, which he hung against a crevice in the wall, so that the wind passing the opening vibrated the strings. The soft and gentle sounds thus emitted by an instrument untouched by human hand so greatly astonished and awed the ignorant people that they accused Dunstan of sorcery.

Another story runs that when he was one day instructing a lady of high rank in the design of a robe that she was embroidering—he appears to have been frequently consulted for his taste and talent in ornament and design—his harp, as it hung upon the wall, suddenly, and without mortal touch, gave off heavenly music, which melody and harmony the worker-maiden framed into a joyous anthem.

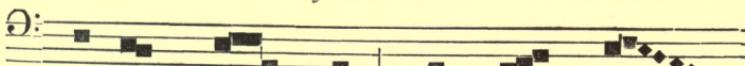
Dunstan is also said to have been a composer, a *Kyrie* written in *Neume* characters in tenth-century MSS. being attributed to him. A story attaches to the composition. On a certain day when King Edgar, who was still alive, was going a-hunting, he asked Dunstan to delay Mass until his return. Towards the third hour the man of God assumed the sacred vestments, and, awaiting the King, knelt before the altar absorbed in tears and prayer. And behold, suddenly, overcome by sleep, he was taken up to heaven, and in the company of the angels he heard them sing to the Trinity with tuneful voices, *Kyrie eleyson*, *Christe eleyson*, *Kyrie eleyson*. Coming

blown by treading or walking upon the bellows. The larger the organ the greater was the number of men required for the business.

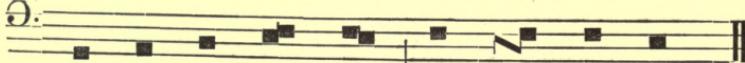
to himself, he inquired if the King had returned. The answer was 'No.' Again, therefore, he fell to prayer, and being again taken up to heaven, he there heard said in a loud voice: *Ite Missa est.* But when *Deo Gratias* should have been responded, the clerks came in haste saying that the King had arrived. He replied to them that he had already heard Mass, and that he should neither hear nor celebrate another that day. On being asked wherefore, he recounted his vision, and, taking it for his text, forbade the King's hunting any more on the Lord's Day. The *Kyrie eleison* which he heard in heaven he taught his clerks. Its melody is contained in that trope so popular with the English, *Kyrie rex splendens*.

MISSA—REX SPLENDENS.

Kyrie Eleison.

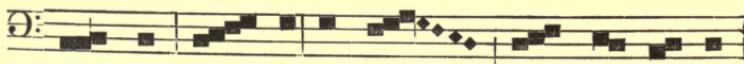
Θ: 

LORD, have mer - cy up - on us,

Θ: 

and in - cline our hearts to keep this law. ||

Sanctus.

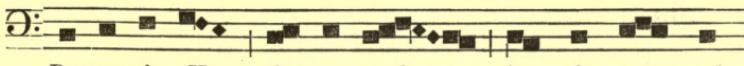
Θ: 

Ho - ly, Ho - ly, Ho - ly, Lord God of hosts,

Θ: 

he a - ven and earth are full - - - of thy glo - ry. ||

Benedictus.

Θ: 

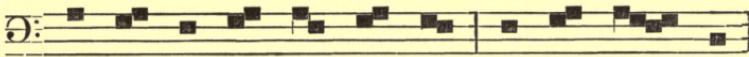
BLESSED is He that com - eth - - in the name of
the Lord: Ho - san - na in the high - est. ||

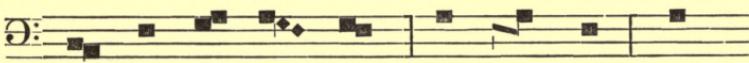
Agnus Dei.

Θ: 

O LAMB of God, that ta - kest a - way the sins
of the world, have mer - cy up - on us. ||

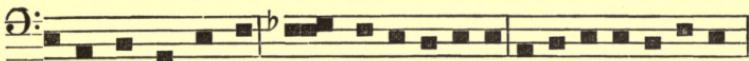
Gloria in Excelsis.

Θ: 

GLO - RY be to God on high, and in earth peace,
Θ: 

good will to - wards men. We praise thee, we

Credo.

Θ: 

I be-lieve in one God the Father Almighty, Maker of heaven and earth,

The introduction of the organ into England—of which more anon—constituted quite a landmark in our national musical history. Not only was the

instrument destined to play a chief and really valuable part in the church services for many generations, but it was to grow into a musical body of truly wonderful

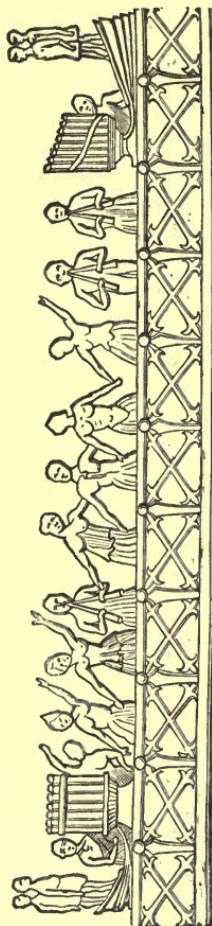
Introduc- power and workmanship—such as its first
tion of the constructors would scarcely, perhaps, have
Organ. believed.

In time, too, gradual processes of improvement and development ensued, and in these the English workmen were always to the front, until eventually the best organs that were to be obtained in Europe were constructed solely by English firms. To-day the building of organs, whether for church, concert-hall, or chamber, has become one of the leading trades of this country ; and if the British workman will only cling to the best traditions of his trade, there is no reason why any foreign element should supplant him in this art for very many years to come. But he must build lovingly and honestly.

The musical tastes of the monks and those who attended the regular services of Matins and Even-song could not fail to be quickened by the advent of an instrument like the organ, primitive as its condition was. From the outset it possessed one quality that lifted it above every other instrument, namely, its 'sustaining' character—a property which proved of great service in the Church establishments where the singing of the monks had no other support than was afforded by the occasional introduction of a flute or harp, such as the canons of the Church then per-

mitted. It is improbable that the adoption of the organ was either speedy or general, chiefly because of the cost of manufacture, the time occupied in constructing instruments, and the difficulty of learning the art of organ-playing; although, judging by the earliest known instruments, the first organists were scarcely required to be very dexterous at the keyboard.

Some doubt exists concerning the first use of organs in England. An old manuscript known as the 'Utrecht Psalter,' generally supposed to be of the fifth or sixth century, indicates their existence here long before the Conquest, and as early, indeed, as the time of Augustine. This is improbable, however, since it was only introduced into the Romish Church by Pope Vitalian I. about the year 666 A.D., although the instrument had been known and recognized on the Continent as a valuable adjunct to congregational singing long before that time. Vitalian's missionaries, Theodore and Adrian, are



PNEUMATIC ORGANS OF THE FOURTH CENTURY, SHOWING THE METHOD OF BLOWING.

instrument destined to play a chief and really valuable part in the church services for many generations, but it was to grow into a musical body of truly wonderful

**Introduc-
tion of the
Organ.** power and workmanship—such as its first constructors would scarcely, perhaps, have

believed. In time, too, gradual processes of improvement and development ensued, and in these the English workmen were always to the front, until eventually the best organs that were to be obtained in Europe were constructed solely by English firms. To-day the building of organs, whether for church, concert-hall, or chamber, has become one of the leading trades of this country; and if the British workman will only cling to the best traditions of his trade, there is no reason why any foreign element should supplant him in this art for very many years to come. But he must build lovingly and honestly.

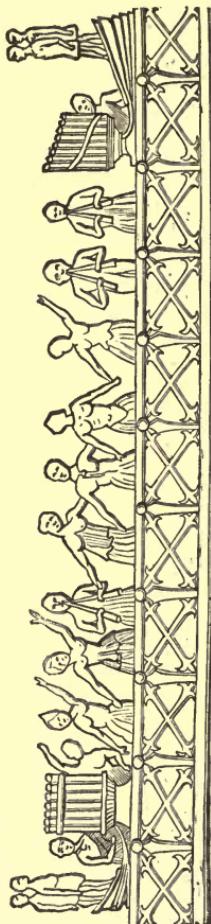
The musical tastes of the monks and those who attended the regular services of Matins and Even-song could not fail to be quickened by the advent of an instrument like the organ, primitive as its condition was. From the outset it possessed one quality that lifted it above every other instrument, namely, its 'sustaining' character—a property which proved of great service in the Church establishments where the singing of the monks had no other support than was afforded by the occasional introduction of a flute or harp, such as the canons of the Church then per-

mitted. It is improbable that the adoption of the organ was either speedy or general, chiefly because of the cost of manufacture, the time occupied in constructing instruments, and the difficulty of learning the art of organ-playing; although, judging by the earliest known instruments, the first organists were scarcely required to be very dexterous at the keyboard.

Some doubt exists concerning the first use of organs in England. An old manuscript known

First Use of Organs. as the 'Utrecht Psalter,' generally supposed to

be of the fifth or sixth century, indicates their existence here long before the Conquest, and as early, indeed, as the time of Augustine. This is improbable, however, since it was only introduced into the Romish Church by Pope Vitalian I. about the year 666 A.D., although the instrument had been known and recognized on the Continent as a valuable adjunct to congregational singing long before that time. Vitalian's missionaries, Theodore and Adrian, are



PNEUMATIC ORGANS OF THE FOURTH CENTURY, SHOWING THE METHOD OF BLOWING.

reputed to have brought the art of organ-playing to England, and they were also charged to lead the singing at the Church services, and to instruct others so to do. Cassiodorus (*circa* 481-577 A.D.), Consul of Rome under King Vitigas the Goth in 514 A.D., thus describes the organ of his day: 'It is composed of divers pipes, formed into a kind of tower, which, by means of bellows, is made to produce a loud sound, and, in order to express agreeable melodies, there are in the inside movements made of wood that are pressed down by the fingers of the player, and produce the most pleasing and brilliant tones.'

Bishop Aldhelm (died 709 A.D.), sometime Abbot of Malmesbury and subsequently Bishop of Sherborne, is credited with introducing an organ into England—'a mighty instrument with innumerable tones, blown with bellows, and enclosed in a gilded case'; but it is more difficult to substantiate such a record than that which states that Dunstan in his musical zeal furnished numerous churches and convents with organs. Faithful Aldhelm! In order to ingratiate himself with the lower orders of the Saxons, and to induce them to listen to his preaching, he was in the daily habit of dressing himself like a minstrel, and taking his stand on the bridges and highroads, first singing to his listeners some of their national songs.

When Dunstan restored the monasteries of Ely,

Peterborough, Tewkesbury, Glastonbury, Evesham, and many others, an organ—the latest addition to ecclesiastical adornments—would scarcely have been forgotten by the musical enthusiast and liberal-minded Prelate. William of Malmesbury (1095-1143) chronicles one such gift which Dunstan provided for the Abbey of Malmesbury in King Edgar's reign (942-974). This instrument is important, since it appears to have been entirely made by English organ-workers, who had become such skilled craftsmen that they had already inaugurated 'improvements' in the shape of copper pipe in lieu of lead. In this particular instrument the pipes were of brass, probably for the purpose of obtaining a more brilliant tone, and it appears to have been fabricated on the Abbey premises, probably under the direction of Dunstan himself, who, to his other attainments, added that of an expert artificer in metals. Dunstan gave an organ to Abingdon Abbey also. In this same century Earl Elwin presented an organ to the convent at Ramsay. On this instrument he is said to have expended the then large sum of £30 in copper pipes, which 'resting with their openings in thick order, on the spiral winding in the inside, and being struck on feast days with a strong blast of bellows, emitted a sweet melody and a far-resounding peal.'

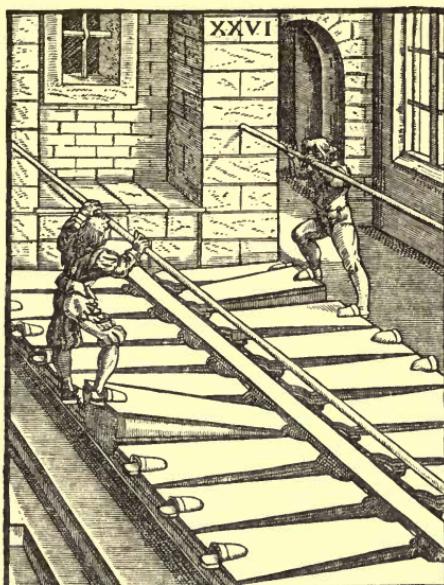
Although we are not without details relative to these first English organs, their exact character can

scarcely be ascertained from the fragmentary information which early historians have left; while the manner of playing upon them, and the situation **Character of First English Organs.** of the organist, or organists—for there would often appear to be more than one—constitute real problems, the solution of which would seem to have departed with the original organists. That they were instruments blown with bellows is certain. Bede describes the organ of his day as ‘a tower built up of many pipes, from which by the blast of bellows a most copious sound is obtained, and that the same may be composed of fit melody, it is furnished on the inside with wooden tongues, which, being skilfully depressed by the master’s fingers, produce grand and very sweet music.’ Aldhelm mentions an instrument with ‘a thousand pipes,’ the external ones of which were gilded—a common feature of Anglo-Saxon organs. Thus :

‘Maxima millenis auscultans organa flabris
Mulceat auditum ventosis follibus iste,
Quamlibet auratis fulgescant coetera capsis.’

Some further insight into the style of construction of these early organs is gleaned from the account **Win-chester Cathedral Organ.** which Wulfstan, or Wulstan, has left respecting the organ erected in Winchester Cathedral, and which must have been, from all accounts, the musical wonder of the age. Ælfheah, surnamed Elphegus Calvus, was Bishop

of Winchester in 935-951 A.D., and provided, among other adornments, an organ the like of which had not been seen or heard. Wulfstan, cantor and Benedictine monk of Winchester (*circa* 900-963),* has preserved the fame of this organ in a poem which is printed in the 'Acts of the Order of St. Benedict.' Extravagant as the poet is, it is improbable that his enthusiasm affects his accuracy, since the details are clear enough. We learn that this organ was built with two sound-boards. It was erected in honour of St. Peter, to whom the cathedral was dedicated, and



ORGAN BELLOWS AND BLOWERS, SHOWING THE OLD METHOD OF ORGAN BLOWING.†

* 'Acta Sanctorum Ordinis Benedict.'

† An essential condition in modern organ-playing is a sustained supply of wind uniformly distributed. Several expedients, involving water-power, gas-engines, etc., have been resorted to in order to secure the desired pressure for all pipes in the instruments. The present hand system of blowing is not satisfactory, but the jerky results from pressing the wind in with the feet must have been infinitely worse.

had twelve bellows ranged in a row, and fourteen more below. These were worked by seventy strong men, who, covered with perspiration, laboured with their arms so industriously that an immense quantity of wind was supplied in alternate blasts by these bellows.

The poem goes on to relate that each blower excited his companions to drive the wind up with all his strength, so that the 'full-bottomed box,' with its four hundred pipes, might speak worthily. Details are given of the organist's method. The



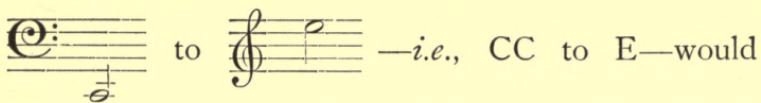
whole four hundred pipes he pressed with his hands. Some pipes when closed he opened, others when opened he closed, according to the nature of the varied sounds required. Two monks of concordant spirit presided at the instrument, each managing his own alphabet or musical tablature. Concerning the power of the instrument the poem translates forcibly: 'Like thunder the iron tones batter the ear, so that it may receive no sound but that alone. To such an amount does it reverberate, echoing in every direction, that everyone stops with his hand his gaping ears, being in no wise able to draw near and bear the sound which so many various combinations produce. The music is heard throughout the town, and the flying fame thereof is gone out over the whole country.'

‘Twelve pairs of bellows, ranged in stated row,
 Are join’d above, and fourteen more below;
 These the full force of seventy men require,
 Who ceaseless toil, and plenteously perspire;
 Each aiding each, till all the wind be prest
 In the close confines of th’ incumbent chest,
 On which four hundred pipes in order rise
 To bellow forth the blast that chest supplies.’

MASON : *Essays on English Church Music.*

This organ was intended to be heard all over Winchester, and probably was, since the city then was but a small and quiet settlement of learning and piety. In modern times there is no such ambition, which is well, since the prospect of all the organs, say in London, proving as persistent as the church bells would be too alarming.

An instrument possessing forty keys, among which were the semitones of the chromatic scale, and the compass of which has been estimated to have been three and a half octaves, that is, from



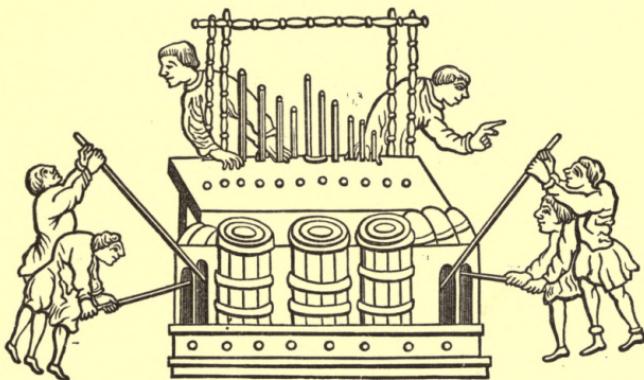
permit of much that might have proved of musical value, provided the ‘two monks of concordant spirit’ worked in harmony; otherwise the consequences could easily have proved disastrous musically and physically.*

* Wulfstan turned his fellow-pupil Lantfred’s ‘Posthumous Miracles of St. Swithun’ into Latin verse. Of Wulfstan’s verse

The representations of early English organs which have reached us cannot, it is to be feared, be wholly trusted. The illuminations in MSS. and missals are not always faithful pictures of existing instruments, but a curious illustration of an organ of about this date, and apparently a faithful delineation, is given in a MS. Psalter of Eadwine preserved in the library of Trinity College, Cambridge. The pipes are placed within a frame, and the surface of the organ is represented as being perforated to receive a second set of pipes, though the draughtsman appears to have sketched one hole too many. The two organists, whose duties seem for the moment to have been brought to an end by the inattention of the blowers, are intent on admonishing their four assistants, who are striving to get up the wind supply, which their neglect has apparently allowed

only a few fragments remain, but there is a dedication of many distichs to his Bishop, *Ælfheah*. The Bishop is praised for the spirit with which he carried on the building works at Winchester Cathedral, for the labyrinth of secret crypts, for the great organ (on which he expatiates), and for the great tower with five windows, surmounted by a gilt cock with a sceptre in its claws. Wulfstan celebrates the stately consecration of the church in which eight bishops were engaged ; he instances also the holy men there buried, Swithun and Ethelwold, with whom *Ælfheah*, who so well follows in their steps, will hereafter be joined. This MS. is in the British Museum Collection. William of Malmesbury states that Wulfstan wrote a practical work entitled 'De Tonorum Harmonia', (On the Harmony of Tones), and describes it as a 'very useful' book. As a fact, it remained a standard work for two hundred years.

to run out. The bellows are blown in a manner which we here meet with for the first time, namely, through the intervention of handles instead of directly by the hands ; and as in so small an organ there could not have been room for four persons to compress the wind by standing upon the bellows, as had hitherto been the custom, we may infer that they were loaded with weights in the manner that



ANCIENT ENGLISH CHURCH ORGAN, WITH BELLOWS AND DOUBLE KEYBOARD.

(*Eadwine Psalter, Cambridge MS.*)

has generally been supposed not to have been introduced until some centuries later.

The influence which the introduction of the organ actually had upon the services seems to have escaped the notice of early writers. That it proved a great boon in the rendering of the services, we have previously suggested. Those monks of old who chanted the Gregorian Liturgy must have had strong throats indeed, and have sung

Influence
of the
Organ.

lustily to have made themselves heard amidst the solid brick and stonework of the more important of the Saxon churches, without the aid of such support to the voice as only the organ could supply. The question of pitch, too, would be important. Given an accurate starting-note, which the more gifted of the singing monks would be able to secure readily, there would still be the inevitable sinking in pitch which always follows unaccompanied singing, especially when the congregation takes its share therein. This would be more present in hymn-singing than in the restricted range of the Gregorian tones ; but in either case it is easy to conceive a gradual and imperceptible depression, ending eventually in the complete disappearance of the original tune.

Here would seem to be some small additional reason, therefore, for supposing that instruments of some kind were an adjunct in both the British and Anglo-Saxon Church services long before the introduction of the organ, since the art of congregational singing had scarcely reached its present-day perfection, when here and there congregations numbering thousands are capable of producing profound effects from plain, unaccompanied singing. This would seem to be borne out by Wulfstan, according to whom the instruments employed in the church services were not restricted to organs. He writes : 'When the choral brethren unite, each chants your prayers by the peculiar art whereof he is master ; the sound of

instruments of pulsation is mixed with the sharp voices of reeds, and by various apparatus the concert proceeds sweetly,' from which we may fairly infer that the Anglo-Saxons resorted to all their orchestral resources in order to enhance the effect of the Church service. That there were resources in every choir-stall, from which the monks could, if needs be, pitch their intoning notes, and which would aid their singing if occasion required, would be only natural, albeit such details have not reached us. It was not because it supplanted such musical appliances, however, nor on account of its valuable properties as an eminently suitable foundation for singing, that the introduction of the organ into English churches stands out as an important matter. Its advent meant a vast stride in the progress of the art, and a mighty step in theoretical music. Organists began to invent, or descant, upon the organ, by which the plain chant, or *canto fermo*, had another part as an accompanying melody added to it. Here was the first step in the opening up of the vast field of contrapuntal science and possibility in which the organ, and, later, British organists, were destined to play a prominent and most excellent part.

Thus, the music of the Church firmly established once more, and this time among the Anglo-Saxons, continued to grow for very many years, exercising a vast influence for good upon the minds and dispositions of the inhabitants of the country, and gradually

but surely, moulding our national musical style and manner. View the matter as we may, we should be ungrateful indeed did we fail to acknowledge our indebtedness to those prelates and churchmen from Rome who introduced their Christian musical art into England, and not only took pains to impart a knowledge of it in their wanderings and settlements in our island, but even helped in the building of the music-schools in which they were afterwards to serve as masters and instructors.

The first of these ecclesiastical music-schools was inaugurated at Canterbury, thanks to the efforts of Gregory, Augustine—his missionary—and their

Music-Schools in England. successors. Hitherto, as we have seen, it was the custom for the clergy to travel

to Rome for improvement in music, and frequent requests had to be made to the Holy College for teachers, who could impart the Church service music here. With the Canterbury seminary once provided with teachers, all this was at an end, and for many years afterwards pupils were taught to become instructors, and were then despatched to such parts of the island as owned obedience to the Roman see. The exact date of the founding of this music-school is unknown, but it was probably subsequent to Bede's appeal to Pope Agatho for Church singing-masters for the Northumbrian diocese. With the increasing need of singers, as the new churches sprang up, the expense and delay of sending to

Rome for instructors would naturally suggest to Augustine the desirableness of such a home school. We may conclude, therefore, that whatever the British clergy had formerly possessed in the shape of musical training-schools, this one at Canterbury, associated with Augustine's name, was the first school of its kind which the Roman clergy built. Here we may be sure the Gregorian chant, as used in the different parts of the service, was thoroughly taught by qualified Roman masters ; and this with such success that every vestige of early British music, and the subsequent Gallican chant, ultimately disappeared before the rapid progress of Gregorian Tones in every part of the island.

The effect of this new wave of religious music can be imagined. As it spread over the land it did a threefold work : it made its power felt as a beautiful and fitting aid to the worship of Almighty God in the precincts and courts of His sanctuary ; it materially shaped and moulded the musical aspirations of the then existing, and successive, generations of Englishmen ; and it went to the hearts of the rugged Saxon races, softening the characteristic asperities, and preparing all who came within its power for the better reception of the Gospel message, all of which was propitious, since for the news of Christ which the British clergy had taken to the heathen Germans they in return brought much that was bad into Britain. One form of this was the amorous songs

and romantic effusions, little calculated to improve the minds of either those who sang or those who heard them. These songs reached such a pitch of lewdness and indecency that their suppression became imperative, and in the work of cleansing and stamping out this pernicious element the monks engaged with laudable rigour and results. Sacred

music was the antidote employed, and its elevating power proved as beneficial as it ever has proved to all who have been brought under its benign influence. Music—purest of all arts, and an innocent and beautiful employment for mind and body when shaped in its best secular forms



DANCE OF THE NINTH CENTURY, WITH LYRE AND DOUBLE FLUTE.

(From the Cotton MSS.)

—ever becomes, indeed, a potent agent for good when it reaches philosopher or savage in the form of sacred music.

‘O secret music ! sacred tongue of God !
I hear thee calling to me, and I come !’

LELAND : *The Music Lesson of Confucius.*

In the religious houses it was as a blessing, since it proved well fitted to fill the periods of leisure and

relaxation which followed upon the meditations and offices in the lives of saintly ones vowed to celibacy and monastic life. Thus, in the convents and monasteries music was always present, beautifying the lives and minds of those within the cloister walls ; while to the outside world its practice was constantly recommended as a remedy and alternative for idle hours and unprofitable pursuits.

Here, then, we must close the narrative of the rise and progress of Church music in England from Augustine's time to that of the thorough settlement of the Roman Church and its bishops in England.

Christianity revived by Augustine had, indeed, spread wondrously and gloriously. In this growth music had proved a great aid, since, of the many churches throughout England, there was not one, probably, at this time, whose clergy and congregation alike were not bound together by the musical sympathies engendered by the Gregorian chant.

Truly this gift of Gregory's to the Britons was priceless, especially if we consider what sacred musical art might have remained without it. Nor was Church music to be hastily taken from the charge of the clergy and monks who had nurtured it to its healthy existence. For several centuries—until the advent of the first of the glorious roll of English Church composers—sacred music, *i.e.*, music of the choir and chancel, remained in the hands of the clergy.

No specific sign of progress marks this long period, and no single name stands out among the generations of priest-musicians, monks and singers who daily chanted the services through all these years. Indeed, apart from the ecclesiastical chant, the clergy would seem to have left the art to the outside world, for the genesis of harmony appears to have sprung from the northern parts of Europe, and it was not until several centuries after it had been freely adopted for secular purposes that it was admitted into the service of the Church. Year after year the vaulted roofs of the churches rang with the old-accustomed strains from the deep-toned throats of the monks—and many of them possessed wondrous voices indeed.

The apparent standstill is easily accounted for. The Church had her settled services, with the approved musical ritual direct from Rome. Obedient to authority, the clergy were content with this, their duty being to preserve, and not to alter, either tone or inflection. It would have been little short of a rebellious act, or even heresy, to tamper with the service music, and the labours of the monks would be directed largely to copying and duplicating the service books, rather than to the inventing of new melodies and cadences—no light task if we remember that writing was the accomplishment of the few, and that the needs for choir books in both old and new churches were great. Of all this early

monastic industry scarcely a remnant remains, though, happily, its influence has been lasting, and is yet traditional in many a church library throughout the land.

Not only did missal, gradual, psalter, and antiphonaria need to be copied and disseminated this while. The art of musical notation, which had

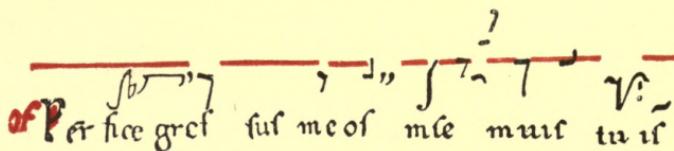
Invention of Notation. hitherto been in a crude state, was commanding the attention of musical minds, and was soon to be shaped for all time by the splendid discoveries of Guido d'Arezzo (*circa* 950-1025 A.D.) and Franco of Cologne (*circa* 1000-



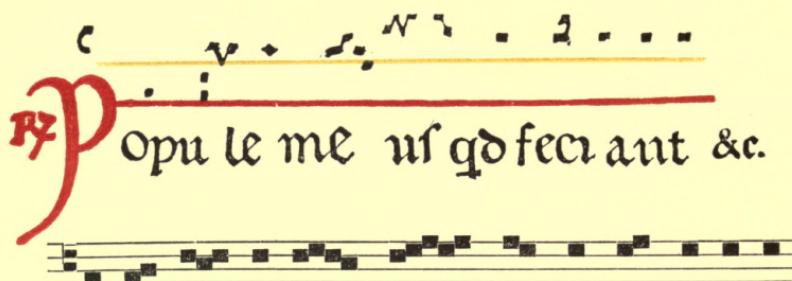
Neume Characters, invented by St. Ephraim, a Monk of the Fourth Century, who originated the Neume System.

1075 A.D.). The primitive Neume* notation employed in writing the Gregorian chant was the system almost exclusively adopted by church choirs, monasteries, and academies formed for the dissemination of sacred song through the tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, for it was long before Guido's masterly and intelligible method of lines and spaces, or Franco's notes of various lengths,

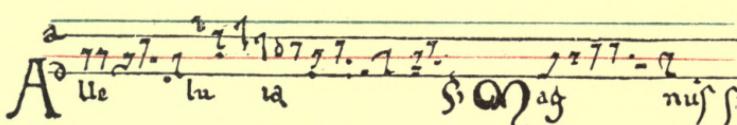
* The word 'Neuma' is derived from the Greek *πνεῦμα*, meaning *breath*. The advantage of the Neume system over the alphabetical system of the Greeks and Romans consisted in its notifying more clearly to the priest where the inflexions and modulations were required in the chanting of the Gospel, Epistles, Psalms, etc.



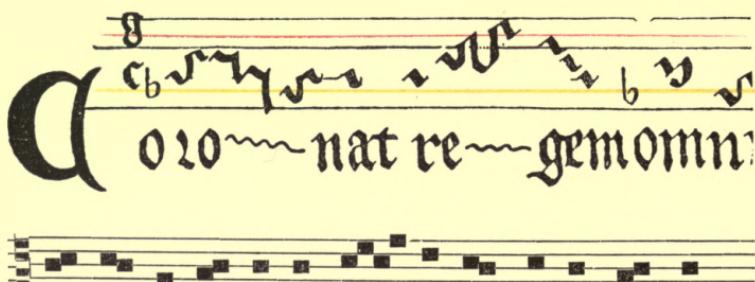
(a) Neume Notation of the Tenth Century.



(b) Neume Notation of the Eleventh Century, deciphered by Martini.



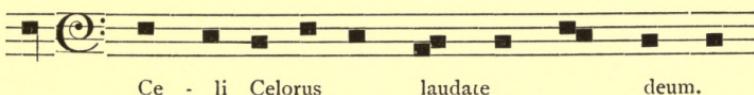
(c) Neume Notation of Guido of Arezzo.



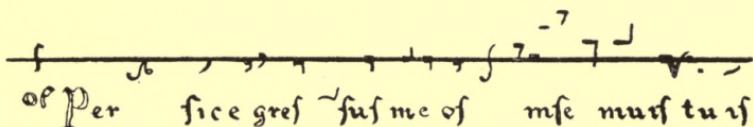
(d) Deciphered Neume Notation of the Latest Period.

Celi celoy laudate deum

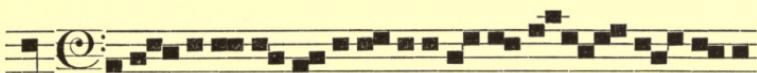
Neumata.



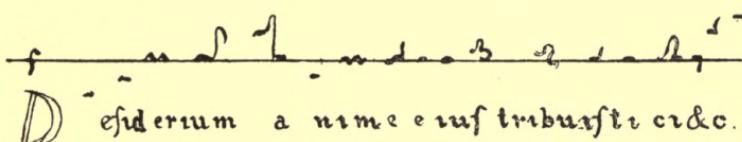
Translation.



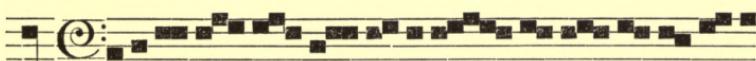
Neumata.



Translation.



Neumata.



Translation.

became general. Its characters suggested the value and pitch of the tones, but coloured lines, as in the examples *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, had to be employed subsequently to indicate the tonic or key-note.* The clergy would be the first to hear of such improvements in musical notation as Guido and Franco were giving to the world, and slowly as the new fashion of writing music would become known to the copyists in the monasteries, the manifest advantages of the stave and measured notes would not be disregarded by the heads of the abbeys and churches.

Guido d'Arezzo, *Inventus Musicæ*, as he was ~~of Arezzo~~ named, was probably the first to use the lines as well as the spaces of the stave, and borrowing some syllables from a hymn to St. John (written by Paul Diaconus), the patron saint of singing in those days, he gave us the well-known *do re mi*, etc., with which we 'sol-fa' at the present

* The red line was introduced about the year 900. All notes written upon it were F's; those above the line were higher; those below it being graver or lower. There have been three accepted systems of musical notation: (*a*) the Alphabetical letters; (*b*) the Neume; and (*c*) our present system of notes, lines, spaces, and a stave. Of these the Neume partially, and our present system perfectly, illustrate the undulations of the melody. The alphabet method did not. We owe our notes nomenclature, and the F, C, and G clefs, however, to the primitive alphabet system. An ancient Office Book, used at Winchester Cathedral, is in the Bodleian Library (775). The MS. is attributed to the time of King Ethelred II. (d. 1016), and has the plain chant notes written upon lines and spaces of a stave with four lines.

time. The following shows the hymn as it was anciently sung, taken from a manuscript of Sens :

Ut queant la - xis, Re - so - na - re fi - bris, Mi - ra ges - to - rum,
 Fa - mu - li tu - o - rum, Sol - ve pol - lu - ti, La - bi - i re - a - tum,
 Sanc - te Jo - han - nes.

And which in modern notation would appear thus :

UT que - ant la - - xis, RE - so - na - re fi - bris,
 MI - ra ges - to - rum, FA - mu - li tu -
 - o - rum, SOL - ve pol - lu - ti,
 LA - bi - i, re - a - tum, San - cte Johannes.

In the prologue to the Antiphonarium, Guido speaks of his invention as follows : 'By Divine

assistance, I have pointed out such a method of notation that, by a little help from a master at first, an intelligent and studious person may easily acquire the rest by himself. And if anyone should suspect



GUIDO OF AREZZO.

my veracity in this assertion, let him come to our convent, let him make the experiment, let him examine the children under my care, and he will find that, though they are still severely punished for their ignorance of the psalms, and blunders in the reading, they can now sing correctly, without a

master, the chants to those psalms of which they can scarcely pronounce the words.' He then explains the use of the lines and spaces, and tells us that 'all the notes which are placed on the same line, or in the same space, denote the same sound; and that the name of the sound is determined either by the colour of the line, or by a letter of the alphabet placed at the beginning of it: a rule of such consequence,' he adds, 'that if a melody be

written without a letter (that is, a cliff, or coloured line), it will be like a well without a rope, in which,

A	Sōlis ōr̄ tū	F	rānci rōmāni
v	ir̄quētidōcciduā	A	r̄quētinc̄t̄rēclūlī
L	rr̄tōrē mār̄s	L	uctūp̄unguntūr̄
P	lāngtūsp̄lās̄p̄ct̄zā	E	tmāgnāmōlēstā
v	l̄tr̄ mār̄inā	I	nfārc̄s̄ s̄nēs̄
A	ḡmīnātr̄st̄tīcī	G	l̄r̄os̄ip̄r̄inc̄p̄s̄
I	et̄ḡt̄inḡs̄	N	āclāngt̄or̄b̄s̄
C	um̄r̄r̄ōe n̄m̄iō	D	ār̄imēntūmk̄ar̄ōlī
H	ēūm̄ēdōl̄n̄s̄plānḡz̄		Heām̄ichim̄s̄ero



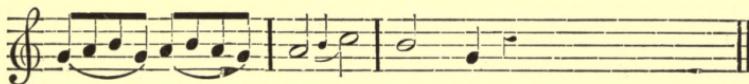
A so - lis or - tu us-que ad oc - ci-du - a Lit - to - ra ma - ris



planctus pulsat pec - to - ra ; Ul - tra ma - ri - na ag - mi - na tris -



ti - ti - a Te - ti - git in - gens cum er - ro - re ni - mi - o.

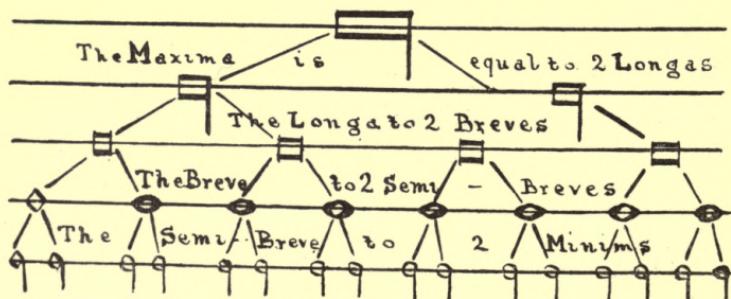


Heu ! me do - lens, plan - go !



though there be plenty of water, it will be of no use.'

Franco of Cologne identified himself with the measuring of music, *i.e.*, the determining of the relative lengths of the notes. The hitherto unmeasured art, or *cantus planus*, he spaced out in the following powers, inventing the terms *maxima*, *longa*, *breve*, *semibreve*, and *minim*, to express the value of the notes :



He also devised the following 'rests' or silences, giving each a relative value to its agreeing note.

It was not, however, until the fourteenth century that characters were used to express Time in music.

The Pause which fills 3 spaces is equal to a Maxima	- - -	
That which fills 2 spaces is equal to a Longa	- - - -	
That which fills 1 space is equal to a Breve	- - - - -	
That which is placed above and fills half a space is equal to a Semibreve	- - - - -	
That which is placed below and fills the half of a space is equal to a Minim	- - - - -	

A glance at the following illustration of the same period notation will show how nearly we then were to reaching our present characters or cyphers, which neither time nor invention seems able to improve.



Large. Long. Breve. Semibreve. Minim. Semiminim. Chroma. Semichroma.

These notes proceeded in regular gradations, the large being equal to two longs, four breves, eight semibreves, etc. Any note written in red ink was diminished a fourth part; thus a red semibreve, instead of being equal to four semi-minims, was only equal to three. Thomas Walsingham, again referred to in Chapter VIII., mentions five characters as used in his day, viz., the *large*, the *long*, the *breve*,

the *semibreve*, and *minim*. He adds: 'Of late a new character has been introduced called a *crotchet*, which would be of no use if musicians would only remember that beyond the *minim* no subdivision ought to be made,' to which criticism it only remains to be asked: What would this ancient have said to the quavers and demisemiquavers, together with the whole range of musical fireworks of to-day?

After the invention of the Time-table, music became freed from its bondage. We find that when music meant merely the chanting a few sacred words, such as a hymn, the natural measure of the words supplied all the time that was necessary; and long and short notes, corresponding with this measure, were sufficient for the purpose required. But as the art advanced, and more especially as florid counterpoint—or notes of various lengths sung by different voices to the same syllable—became used, it was necessary that characters should be invented to express time in order to avoid confusion.

As against this doubtless well-deserved reputation of Guido and Franco, some writers have urged that hymn tunes exist of the period of *Æthelred II.*, surnamed the Unready (978-1016 A.D.), with music in staves of four lines and spaces, thus showing that the English possessed, and used, lines and spaces before the reputed invention of them by Guido.

A somewhat isolated name in English musical history calls for notice here, since the bearer of it

proved a famous commentator of Guido. This is John Cotton, supposed to be an Englishman, and whom Gebertus conjectures to be the same as

John Cotton. *Johannes Scholasticus*, a monk of Treves, who lived about 1050. He was the author of a tract entitled 'De Arte Musica,' which he dedicated to Fulgentius Episc. Anglorum—an English Bishop whose name it is otherwise difficult to trace. Whether Cotton lived as early, and was of English nationality, has been doubted; but there is much in favour of such a belief. There is a good English ring, for instance, about the name of 'John Cotton,' and he would easily acquire the classical appellation 'Johannes Scholasticus' from the fashion of renaming learned men upon their entering foreign monasteries. Again, he must have lived soon after Guido, since Cotton acts as his commentator, and recommends the Harmonic Hand system, invented by Guido, to those who wish to fasten the hexachords upon their memories.

Burney states he saw in the Jesuits' College at Antwerp* a Latin tract on music, of which Cotton was the author. In the first chapter of this tract

Cotton MSS. Cotton states that 'solmization by the six syllables, *ut, re, mi, fa*, etc., was practised by the English.' As it would have occupied some little time to make this sol-fa method by Guido known, it is probable that Cotton lived somewhat later than

* Burney, 'History of Music,' vol. ii., p. 96.

1050, which would agree with Burney's statement that the MS. tract was written in the twelfth century.

The tract appears to have been duplicated, a second copy being in the Pauline Library at Leipzig, and a third in the Vatican.

Burney declares the work to be the most ample and complete treatise, as well as one of the most ancient on the subject of music, that has been preserved between the time of Guido and Franchinus (Gafurius) (1025-1521). The Padre Martini (1706-1734), who examined the subject very carefully, writes: 'After all possible diligence, and the most minute inquiry, I have not been able to discover any author who has given the intonations [of the Psalms] in notes anterior to John Cotton, who probably flourished in the twelfth century.' This same 'Father' Martini quotes a long

passage from the eleventh chapter of the MS. tract to prove that the predominant and characteristic note of a chant used

to be called the tenor, from *teneo*, I hold, or dwell upon. Hence the prominent position which the



ANGEL PERFORMING
ON A STRINGED
INSTRUMENT.

tenor clef or part has always taken in Church music. Ouseley, the latest authority of value, does not insist too strongly on the English nationality of this clever didactical writer; but, considering the prominence of Cotton's name in early musical history, we shall be quite justified in claiming the man and his work as an ornament of the First English School until some other country can prove that it has as strong a claim to Cotton as we have. This there will be great difficulty in doing.

An interesting anecdote is told of this John Cotton, who, resenting the inappropriate variations and ornaments in which it was the fashion with some of his contemporaries and others to indulge—probably these were the more musically educated monks who added their extempore harmonies to the *canto fermo*—likened them to revellers who, reaching home late at night, could not possibly tell next day by which way they came.

Here, then, we leave these early clerical musical workers battling with the mysteries of the new notation in which gradually the service-music was to be inscribed by those of the monks who best excelled in the art of writing and engrossing. We can imagine the anxious clergy carrying on the services, and sacred music continuing its secret influence for good during many troublous generations, when all other intellectual blessings were either withheld or banished from the reach of the people.

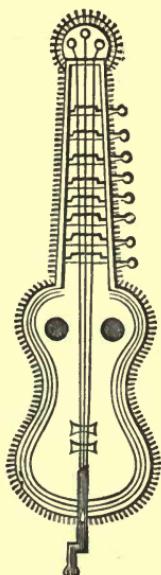
Whether it was that an improved order of Saxons

had been pouring into England when the country was fairly conquered, or whether the steady work of the clergy was beginning to tell in shaping the minds and dispositions of the people, not only in religious, but also in secular phases of life, it is certain that the Anglo-Saxon as settled and reared in England was a different being from the conquering Teuton of three and four centuries before. He altered wondrously into the counterpart of the

Englishman of to-day. Of course the Church was responsible for most of this changed, happy condition of things ; but not a little was brought about by the later generations of Saxons who swarmed into England when once it was subjugated. All the germs of musical art, which the branches of the great Aryan race brought with them from the East, did not fall in Britain alone. The seed settled mainly on German soil, as genial for it in truth as British, and when music first gave signs of life in the Western world, the throbs were simultaneous in the districts touched by the march of the Orient emigrants. So that while music was

prospering in Britain under the later Britons, there was growing up that same while in Germany an art which was destined to come into this country as an influencing factor in the national music.

If we remember, then, that while the original



ORGANISTRUM OF
THE NINTH
CENTURY.

Saxons were little better than savages, their later orders were comparatively civilized people, it is easy

Late Saxon Musical Influence. to understand the advent into England of many musical manners and customs which tended greatly to the advancement of musical method and practice throughout England—at this time much more peopled with Anglo-Saxons than with Britons. Among these habits were many resembling, and therefore easy of alliance with, those of the Britons. Settling among the conquered and almost exterminated people, they speedily affected the national musical character; for the Teuton music was not without a style in strong contrast with Celtic music. It had a good-humoured heartiness, a manly simplicity and strength, together with an impress of sincerity, which rendered it a sure channel to the heart and emotions. The national airs of the Teuton races bear strong testimony to this view, as the following examples will show:

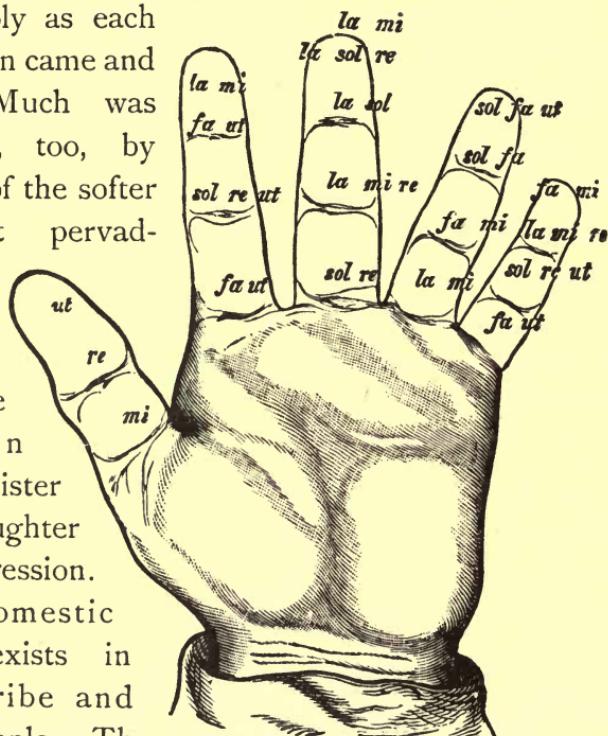
GERMAN PEASANT SONG.



RUSSIAN SOLDIER'S MELODY.



Then there was another and a more affecting element coming into the island which was certain to impress the national musical character. This not outwardly, but in a closer and less seen way. Defiant and detestable as the muse of the original Saxon buccaneers for the most part was, it improved appreciably as each generation came and went. Much was forgotten, too, by the side of the softer sentiment pervading the musical strains to which the Teuton mother, sister and daughter gave expression. This domestic music exists in every tribe and every people. The cradle-song, lulling the infant to sleep ; the plaint of the maiden, dreaming of her far-off lover at the wars ; the child's tuneful measure at her every step—this natural music, which knows no particular age, nor people, came with the



GUIDONIAN OR HARMONIC HAND.

sterner Saxon muse. Whenever met, it is like the air we breathe—is as varied as the wants and aspirations which fill every mind ; and it was this softer feature in Saxon music that drifted into England to help to mould the present English musical character. We can only surmise as to its nature, since no domestic music of such early times has come down to us. We shall not be far wrong in concluding, however, that it was music of that homely kind and inborn origin which is to be heard in the nursery and at the spinning-wheel to-day, music which comes and goes we know not how or whither ; music, albeit, which makes a silent and imperceptible, yet lasting, impression upon all who hear it.

PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES.

‘Early English Church History’	-	-	Bright.
‘ <i>Historia Ecclesiastica</i> ’	-	-	Bede.
‘History of England’	-	-	Lingard.
‘Music and the Anglo-Saxons’	-	-	Wackerbarth.
‘Dictionary of Music and Musicians’	-	-	Grove.
‘Essays on English Church Music’	-	-	Mason.
‘The Organ: its History and Construction’			Hopkins-Rimbault.
‘History of Music’	-	-	Burney.
‘History of Music’	-	-	Hawkins.
‘ <i>L’Art Harmonique aux XII^e et XIII^e Siècles</i> ’			Coussemaker.
‘History of Music’	-	-	Kiesewetter.

CHAPTER VI.

LATE SAXON AND EARLY NORMAN MUSIC.

Alfred, King and Musician—Spying the Danish Camp—Balduolph and Athelstan feigning Music—Alfred founds Oxford University—John, the First Music ‘Professor’—The Coming of the Danes—Christian Shrines and Sanctuaries—Canute’s Taste for Music—The Monks of Ely—Gunhilda’s Wedding-music—Ælfric—Aaron—Church Music under the Danes—Church Music still influencing the People—Popular Street Songs—Westminster and Waltham Abbeys—The Coming of the ‘Conqueror’—Norman Ecclesiastics—William’s Visits to the Churches—A Singing Squabble at Glastonbury—Music among the Normans—Native Music under Norman Rule—Crellan, Soldier-musician—Music under William II.—Chanting at Shrewsbury School—Winchester Cathedral—Henry I. punishing a Minstrel—Rahere, Musician to Henry I.—John of Salisbury—Church Music in Stephen’s Reign—Town Amusements in Henry II.’s Reign.

No name in British musical story possesses greater charm than does that of Alfred, surnamed the Great (849-901 A.D.), King of the Saxons, since it

**Alfred—
King and
Minstrel.** is with him that we are introduced to one of the most interesting stories in earliest English musical life. Alfred was not only a warrior, but the legislator of his people;

he was also a patron of music and the arts, a natural taste for which we find being stimulated early in life by his fond mother Osburga. She, anxious that her children should learn to read, once showed them a Saxon poem elegantly written and beautifully illuminated, which she promised to the one who should first learn to read it. This proved to be Alfred. He stands the first among those enlightened English monarchs whose prescient rule has seen the true advancement of their subjects only in their social and moral greatness; a spirit well reflected—need it be mentioned?—in the person of our present gracious Sovereign.

Flourishing towards the end of the ninth century, Alfred, among other parts which well fitted him to rule, was an excellent musician. Contemporary writers, like his tutor and biographer, Asser, Bishop of Sherborne (died 910 A.D.), Friar John, and Grimbald the monk—Mass Priests—all speak in glowing terms of Alfred's musical ability, and of his encouragement of the art among his people. At the death of Ethelred he was called to the throne by the unanimous voice of the West Saxons, and from that day to the time of



ALFRED THE GREAT.

his death he was occupied mainly in combating the successive incursions of the Danes.

Victory did not always favour him, and it was consequent upon a crushing defeat that we get the story of how he, cautious and solicitous for the

Alfred and the Danish Camp. welfare of his kingdom, determined to first learn the strength of the enemy ere risking another overpowering by numbers. Pondering,

probably during his secure winter retreat among the marshes of Somerset, he conceived the idea of spying out the Danish camp, and it was in connection with the carrying out of this resolve that Alfred comes before us in the double capacity of a fearless, cautious strategist as well as a talented musical Monarch, full of concern for his people. Disguising himself as a minstrel, for he had a master hand for the harp, he, unbeknown to any of his soldiers, made his way towards the Danish encampment, and, little by little, so ingratiated himself with the sentinels by his singing and harp-playing that one night (878 A.D.) he found himself a welcome guest in the very heart of the camp of the Danes. He does not appear to have excited suspicion among his foes; on the contrary, the Danish chief, and those who sat at his table, were charmed by his singing to the harp accompaniments. This is scarcely to be wondered at, inasmuch as before he was twelve years old, Alfred could sing a variety of Saxon songs, which he had learned from hearing

them sung by others. He was provided with a good store, therefore, to entertain Guthrun, the Danish leader, and his soldiers.

Bale (1495-1563) asserts that King Alfred excelled in music, and his information was derived probably from ancient MSS. which, though existing in his time, are now lost. Sir John Spelman (died 1643), who wrote the 'Life of Alfred the Great,' confirms Bale, adding: 'King Alfred provided himself of musicians, not common or such as knew but the prattle part, but men skilful in the art itself, whose skill and services he yet further improved with his own instructions.'

Some writers question the truth of this story of Alfred and the Danish camp, attributing to it a legendary nature; but apart from the evidence of contemporary historians, it is quite consistent with the spirit and musical custom of the age. To explore the Danish camp in the disguise of a harper would be no impossible proceeding in the case of a race as well disposed towards harmony as were the Danes. Moreover, there appears to have existed a sort of freemasonry among musicians in those days; the man who could harp and sing could gain admittance to company wherever he went, whatever his nationality. One nation received the musician of another with every welcome, provided he was sufficiently talented to please by song or tune. It had long been customary for the Saxons to show favour

to the Danish scalds, and it was with no difficulty that the Danes extended a similar friendship to a wandering minstrel of talent, even if a Saxon, wherever he was met. No doubt the plan of subjecting the security of a camp to such a risk was extremely bad generalship, but less ingenious military devices have been resorted to successfully to the same end since those times. On many grounds, therefore, credence should be given to the story. Ingulph, contemporary with the Conqueror, Henry of Huntingdon, Speed, William of Malmesbury, as also the best modern historians, relate the story and accept it as trustworthy—this especially as it is now known that the incident was not without a precedent.

Even as early as the first invasion of Britain by the Saxons a similar occurrence is recorded by a native historian who wrote later. Colgrin, son of that Ella who was elected King or leader of the Saxons in the room of Hengist, was shut up in York, and closely besieged by Arthur and his Britons. Baldulph, brother of Colgrin, wanted to gain access to him, and to apprise him of a reinforcement which was coming from Germany. He had no other way to accomplish his design but by assuming the character of a minstrel. He therefore shaved his head and beard, and, dressing himself in the habit of that profession, took his harp in his hand. In this disguise he walked up and down the

trenches without suspicion, playing all the while upon his instrument as a harper. By little and little he advanced near to the walls of the city, and, making himself known to the sentinels, was in the night drawn up by a rope.* The date of this incident is reputed to be the year 495 A.D.

If further proof were needed of the power of music as a passport in the times which we are considering —times when the enmities of nations could be for-

Aulaff in gotten, or the vigilance of war eluded, **King** **Athelstan's** by the spell even of a stranger's song **Camp.** —it is furnished in an instance parallel with that recounted of King Alfred. About sixty years after Alfred's adventure a Danish king made use of the same disguise to explore the camp of our King Athelstan. With his harp in his hand, and dressed like a minstrel, Aulaff, or Olave, King of the Danes, went among the Saxon tents, and, taking his stand by the King's pavilion, began to play, and was eventually admitted. There he entertained Athelstan and his lords with his singing and his music, and was at length dismissed with an honourable reward, though his songs might have disclosed the fact that he was a Dane. Athelstan was saved from the consequences of this stratagem by a soldier who had observed Aulaff bury the money which had been given him, either from some scruple of honour or superstitious feeling.

* Geoffrey of Monmouth.

As soon as Aulaff was out of danger, the soldier recounted the circumstances to Athelstan, and to the charge of perfidy indignantly replied: 'No! I have shown that my honour is above temptation; and remember that if I had been perfidious to him I might also have proved perfidious to you.' The King accepted the apology and shifted his camp. Werstan, Bishop of Sherborne, with his troops, arrived shortly afterwards, and pitched upon the identical spot, with the result that they were attacked in the night and killed to a man.

But Alfred's musical example and worth is not to be remembered merely on the strength of a pleasant story. In his zeal for the advancement of

**Alfred and
Oxford
University.** learning and culture, he is credited with the founding of Oxford University.

Here he inaugurated the first school in England for the purpose of teaching and diffusing a knowledge of the art of music. Theoretical as well as practical music was taught therein, for it is on record that in the year 886 A.D. the King bestowed on the afore-mentioned Friar John, one of the teachers of theory, the title of *Prælector-Professor of Music*, which is probably the first instance of the use of that term. It would have been quite in keeping for Alfred to have so done. He was sufficiently learned in musical theory to instruct his own 'musicians' in study and performance, and apart from the custom of the times, whereby every gentle-

man learnt music, there is no doubt whatever that Alfred practised, and was a proficient performer on some instrument, probably the harp. In the King's own words, 'Instrument-playing was common among the Anglo-Saxons, and it was shameful to be ignorant of it.'

Asser mentions Alfred's fondness for the oral Anglo-Saxon poems and songs, which he learnt by rote, and then sang to an instrumental accompaniment. On the whole, therefore, this English King's musical reputation will bear scrutiny.

It is recorded among the annals of the Church at Winchester that Alfred founded a musical professorship at Oxford. This small beginning has developed into that great music school of the University which has wrought such good for the art in England, and from which so many famous British composers have taken their musical degrees. King Alfred, with his

Chair of Music. harmonious tendencies and culture, greatly aided Church music, and no doubt it was as much in the cause of sacred as of secular art that he founded the Chair of Music at Oxford which Joannes Monachus—Friar John of St. David's—was the first to fill.*

* Some writers dispute Alfred's connection with the University foundation, and state that it is supported only by documents known to be forged, just as the stories attributing the foundation of Cambridge to Cantaber, a mythical Spanish prince, or to Sigebert, King of the East Angles in the seventh century, are by some held to be the stupidest of historical fabrications. Much

We have seen that, according to Bale, Alfred's knowledge of the art was by no means a superficial one, and this can be well imagined when we are told that that royal personage was able to improve critically upon no less an authority than Bede. The matter was Bede's description of the sacred poet Cædmon's embarrassment when the harp was presented to him in turn, that he might sing to it—'he hearpan singan.' Bede writes: 'Surgebat a media cœnâ, et egressus, ad suum domum repedabat.'

Alfred, literary critic that he was, espied the point, however, and adds that Cædmon not only arose, but arose *for shame*—'aras he for sceome'—thus conveying the fact that it was a disgrace, as then it really was, and should be now, to be ignorant of the musical art. Musicians may ever be proud of this diligent, heroic King, who thought it nought but a privileged duty to read the Psalms to the people in church in the absence of ecclesiastics and nobles who, amid the severity of the times, had fled either to France or to the shelter of Rome. As might have been expected of such a Prince, his Court, like those of other high personages of the time, afforded

the same kind of argument could be advanced, however, in respect to some of the most important truths, and if letter and seal had to be produced for everything which we are asked to believe, we should soon be robbed of many of our most cherished possessions. It seems to us more than probable that Alfred really was identified with an educational movement, including music, at Oxford, which has since grown into that great seat of modern learning.

shelter and succour for the minstrel. The name of one of these has come to us, Geraint, blue-robed bard of the chair and harper to King Alfred, A.D. 880, and is noteworthy inasmuch as he is reputed to have been the author of a grammar. Unquestionably the name of Alfred, good as he was great, is a worthy one in English musical history.

The Danes made their first descent upon England in 787 A.D. They were sea-kings and freebooters, fierce heathen from Denmark and the Scandinavian

Coming of the Danes. lands, who from the eighth century to the eleventh poured into England, seeking, like the English themselves three centuries earlier, a definite settlement. They landed first in Northumberland, where they sacked churches, slew priests and wrecked the mother church at Lindisfarne. Especially did they wreak their fury upon Christian shrines and sanctuaries, spreading universal misery and want wherever they went. Year after year these Danes flocked here, until at the close of the ninth century half England was Danish.

A little later they had secured the throne, and Canute the Great was King (1017-1036 A.D.). Canute—or, as his name is sometimes spelt, Cnut

Canute. —was a terrible destroyer. He repented, however; and when he afterwards became a Christian, he ordered churches and monasteries to be built of stone and mortar in all places where himself or his fathers had burned the churches or minsters during their wars with the Anglo-Saxons.

Canute had a soul and ear for music, as an interesting story which has descended to us tends to prove. One day, attended by the Queen and his Court, he was journeying by water toward Ely, where he was to attend the Feast of the Purification of the Virgin. Passing by the abbey church, he heard the monks chanting their 'hours,' and as the sound of the music grew closer it so charmed the King that he commanded those who were rowing the royal barge to stay their oars, in order that attention might be directed to the singing. Some writers say that the King was so enraptured that he then and there broke into song, and sang the following extempore lines. This seems unlikely, however, as the fragmentary stanza preserved to us points to another author :

Mejne rungen ðe Munecher binnan Ely.
 ða Cnut ching neu ðep by.
 jopeð enitej noej the lant.
 and hepe pe þej Munecher ræng.

Which translated runs :

'The monks of Ely sweetly sung,
 Whilst Cnut the King there row'd along ;
 Row near the land, knights (quoth the King),
 And let us hear the song they sing.'

Another version is :

'Sweetly sang the monks of Ely,
 While Cnut the King was passing by ;
 Row to the shore, knights, said the King,
 And let us hear these churchmen sing.'

The question of the influence of the Danes upon the English musical art and mind is one easy of disposal. If any effect resulted, it was for the worse rather than for the better; for their plundering meant a retrogression towards barbarism, and a decline in learning and culture. All that was beautiful they destroyed, so that that conspicuously religious Prince, King Alfred, has left it on record that 'before the ravages of the Danes he had seen the churches of England full of ornaments and books, nearly all of which they destroyed.' How much of musical worth and merit disappeared through these severities it is impossible to estimate. Such a wholesale destruction, not less than that later ruthless havoc wrought by Cromwell, would have been sufficient, however, to have effected the most complete effacement of all musical identity.

Very scanty, if, indeed, any, are the references to music at this time, the English being well occupied, as can be imagined, in keeping the Danes as

Music under the Danes. much as possible at bay. Here and there a name especially identified with music

has penetrated the gloom of the Danish devastation. The name of Gunhilda, the daughter of Hardicanute, has come down from this period. She was the fairest woman of her time, and when given in marriage to the Emperor Henry III., all the thanes—both English and Danish—accompanied them to the seashore. The songs which were com-

posed for the occasion continued to be sung by the people at their convivial meetings, and preserved the memory of Gunhilda through many succeeding generations.

Another noteworthy personage was Turketal (952 A.D.) a royal clergyman and chancellor, who, choosing to become a singing monk, distributed all his wealth, and made a public profession of religion under the roof of Croyland Monastery, where he received the investiture from Edred the King, together with a blessing pronounced by the Bishop of Dorchester.

About this time flourished *Ælfric* (*circa* 955-1006 A.D.) the writer, the last great name connected with our literature before the Conquest. One of the

Ælfric. first pupils in the monastic school of Ethelwold at Abingdon, he became an instructive, trustworthy author. His works, which include 'Homilies on the Saints and Fathers of the Anglo-Saxon Church,' and his 'Constitutions of the Monks of Eynsham'—where was an abbey, founded by Ethelmer, of which *Ælfric* was Abbot—are especially of interest to those concerned with musical lore and learning. In his day the delivery of works written for the oral instruction of the people was in a sort of recitative—half sung, half spoken. Thus *Ælfric*'s writings are characterized by an alliteration and rhythm somewhat allied to the rhythm of first English verse.

But one other name remains to be mentioned. This is that of Aaron, or Aron (born *circa* 1000, died 1052 A.D.). He was a Scottish musical writer who was Abbot of St. Martin's, at Cologne, in the year 1042 A.D. Little more is known of him, yet his memory may well be preserved as the first of that long list of men who have found a pleasurable occupation in writing upon the art of music.

We have but scant information respecting the fate of Church music under the Danes. The Gregorian chant had obtained too firm a hold, however,

**Sacred
Music
under the
Danes.** in the churches of the country to be permanently dislodged by civil matters like war and strife. It might be stifled by the disturbed times, but it could never be wholly eradicated, and, as we know, it has not been. There is every reason to believe that this Roman Church music, with any remnants of that music used in the old British churches, was the sole ecclesiastical art during Danish times here. The Psalms of David could certainly be heard to the impressive tones and endings for ever to be associated with the name of St. Gregory. The National Library of Paris contains an Anglo-Saxon paraphrase of the Book of Psalms, a part of which, from Psalm li. to cl., is attributed to Aldhelm in the eighth century. There are other Anglo-Saxon MS. psalters in the Cotton Collection of musical manuscripts. These, the famous 'Kentish' psalters, the collection of Latin

hymns of the Anglo-Saxon Church, preserved in a manuscript in the library of the Dean and Chapter of Durham, clearly show that psalms and hymns were sung in the Anglo-Saxon Church. How far they were understood would be a difficult matter to enter upon.

Many and varied were the ways in which the Church, and therefore her services and music, continued to influence the social manners and customs

Music
Supersti- of the people. The farmer, for instance, **tions.** took his religion with him into the field.

As a charm against bad times, he obtained and sprinkled holy water upon the soil, and murmured a *Paternoster*; while not infrequently he took pieces of sod to church to have four Masses, perhaps in reference to the four Evangelists, chanted over them. Then he replaced the earth in the ground, amid the chanting of the hymns and the *Magnificat*, in the hope that the morsels blessed might leaven the whole extent of his acreage towards a bounteous harvest. Music and medicine joined even in a cure for demoniacs. A collection of herbs, made into a liquor, had seven Masses chanted over it, and was then pronounced equal to its work. One—the final—direction only was enjoined: it was imperative that it should be drunk out of a church bell!

As with the Saxons, so with the Danes. The Northmen—Danes and Scandinavians—could not permanently resist the Church. It was the great

civilizing agent, and, with its cosmopolitan influences, was a great power in the land. Sacred music especially proved once more a most potent agent for good in the imperative work which the clergy had before them. When Guthrun signed the famous Treaty at Wedmore and was baptized, with Alfred as his godfather, hundreds of Danes followed the example of their chief. Northumbria, Mercia, and East Anglia were allotted them by the 'Peace' Treaty, and in these provinces they were gradually transformed from roving pirates into agricultural settlers. To their credit be it said, they commenced rebuilding the churches wherein sacred music was wholly kept alive, for the outside world people were mostly given to the singing of common, secular songs.

One that used to be sung about the streets of London in William of Malmesbury's day (*circa* 1095-1143 A.D.) had for its subject the marriage of Gunhilda, the daughter of Hardicanute, already referred to. Other Saxon rhymes or songs popular among the common orders are mentioned by Robert of Brunne. One concerned Gryme the fisher, the founder of Grimsby; another referred to Hanelock the Dane, and his wife, Goldeburgh, daughter to King $\text{\texttt{\AE}}\text{thelwold}$ —all, unhappily, irretrievably lost. Would that some of these songs of the people had had the good fortune to descend to us!

Little more remains to be written of this period of

English musical growth. Before passing to the consideration of music under the Normans, however, two names call for record. The one is that of the pious King, Edward the Confessor (succeeded 1042,

Edward the Confessor. died 1066 A.D.), more fitted for a Norman cloister than the English throne, who introduced Norman architecture into England,

and built the choir and transepts of Westminster Abbey, which was consecrated a few days before his death. The other name belongs to Harold (succeeded and died 1066 A.D.). He, anxious to advance the cause of the secular clergy in opposition to King Edward's care for the regular clergy, built Waltham Abbey as a collegiate foundation in 1062, and provided for the maintenance of a dean and twelve canons therein. The former of these buildings has been closely identified with English ecclesiastical music, especially in

in regal and great civil solemnities ever since.

When, on Christmas Day, 1066, William the Norman was crowned King at Westminster Abbey, a great social victory was gained in England. One

William the Conqueror. of the first institutions to be affected by the change was the Church, to which we

stand so much indebted for much of the vitality which music possessed during the earlier stages of its history in this country. All the bishoprics, abbacies, and livings were filled with Norman ecclesiastics, prominent among whom were Bishop Odo, Remi (Bishop of Lincoln), and the

Abbot Nicholas. These clerical introductions meant a great revival of the observances of religion, and therefore of sacred music. To use the words of William of Malmesbury, 'You might see churches rise in every village, and monasteries in the towns and cities built after a style unknown before.' The monkish chronicler says that 'William built and endowed churches in abundance. Scarcely did his own munificence or that of his nobility leave any monastery unnoticed. . . .

The monastic flock increased, and monasteries arose on every side.'

William himself set a good example. He bore his King's helmet thrice every year into the church. At Easter it was at Winchester ; at Pentecost, Westminster Abbey ; and in midwinter at Gloucester. Then there accompanied him all the rich men over all England —Archbishops and Bishops, Abbots and Earls, Thanes, and others. Mass was chanted and hymns sung to overpowering outbursts of Gregorian tone and inflexion.

Among the changes inevitable with newcomers of any age was one which, judging by its reception, appears to have struck terror into the hearts of those



WILLIAM I.

immediately affected by it. This change was none other than an alteration in the style of singing. It is curious how in those early times the question of a musical innovation met with much the same fate as

Squabble at Glastonbury. such things often do nowadays. The instance of a free fight in the choir-stalls will rarely find its parallel in modern times, however. Holinshed, writing of Church matters in William's reign, mentions a strife which existed between Thurstan, Abbot of Glastonbury, a Norman, and his monks: 'One cause thereof was, for that the Abbot would have compelled them to have left the plaine song or note, for the service which Pope Gregorie had set foarth, and to have used another kind of tune devised by one William of Fescampe.' Words came to blows, and at one of the services 'the Abbot got armed men about him, and falling upon the monkes, slew three of them at the high altar, and wounded XVIIJ. Howbeit the monkes for their part plaied the pretie men, with formes and candlesticks, defending themselves as well as they might; so that they hurt divers of the Abbot's adherents and drove them out of the quier.' Quite a pretty little musical squabble!

Of the social life and manners of the first Normans in England we have but scant information, and the period is particularly barren in musical data and material; but a gentleman was expected to be able to perform upon some instrument of music. The

Bayeux tapestry furnishes a representation of the proceedings at funerals. The corpse of King Edward is there shown being carried on an open bier on the shoulders of eight men, whilst on either side is an acolyte ringing two bells. Then the corpse was watched by priests, who sang from the *Officium Defunctorum* the Antiphon, 'Placebo Domino in regione vivorum.'

Scarcely a single musical name has descended to us belonging to this period, when graver matters probably occupied men's minds. It is easy to

English Music under the Normans. imagine, too, that the Englishman was reserved, if not positively silenced, music-ally, especially remembering the far-reaching grasp and rapacity of the Norman. In remote districts, and in places where the nature of the country provided a safe spot, however, the national art would be kept alive; but the old inhabitants, whether descendants of Britons or Saxons, would retreat as far as possible from the reach of the Norman influence or interference. By this means not a little of the old musical spirit and practice would be preserved.

Crellan was one of the old bards of the country who flourished about this time (1086 A.D.), and is heard of only in his death-scene as the harper of Prince Gryffyddab Cynan. He was killed—soldier-musician that he was—while fighting in the cause of his Prince, who in peace times had fostered and

provided for him.* This is the Gryffydd ab Cynan to whom Dr. Burney refers in his 'History of

* About the year 1042, this Prince issued rules and regulations respecting the bards and minstrels, among which were the following: That no one person was to exercise two callings, as poetry and playing on the harp or *crwth*. That no bard or minstrel was to possess more than the value of *ten shillings*, either in horses or cattle, or expensive apparel, under penalty of forfeiting it to the King—for *rich* men seldom devote themselves to study! An itinerant minstrel was not to go to the house of a gentleman, nor a chief minstrel to the house of a plebeian. It was the office of the itinerant minstrel to rebuke, to mock, to deride, and to entreat, by means of reproach, and all that under the pretence of singing; for which he was to receive a penny, on his acknowledging himself to belong as a mere weed to the bards; and a gibe from the company was to be given to him, that he might make light of the devil, who enticed him to idleness, riotous living, and sloth! The chief minstrel of the country was to have the marriage fines of the daughters of minstrels; he also was to have the presents of young women, when they married; that was four-and-twenty pence.

When the King was desirous to hear a song, the chief minstrel was to sing two songs, the first in the hall, addressed to God, and the other respecting the King.

When the Queen wished to hear a song in her apartment, the domestic bard was to sing three songs to her, *with a moderate voice*, not to occasion any disturbance in the hall. The chief minstrel must be acquainted with all the laws both of poetry and music, and be able to sing both in *harmony* and *concord*, also in cross consonancy (*query* counterpoint) and alliterations; be fond of entertaining subjects, and fertile in wit; also to be able to retain long in his memory the praise of the nobles. The graduated probationary pupil must know *ten concords, one fundamental, five concords of accompaniment, and eight tunes*. The disciplined pupil must know double the above. The master pupil must know three times as many, and be able to explain them. The chief

Music.* Dr. Burney examined an old manuscript transcribed in the time of Charles I., which was

minstrel must know four times as many, and be acquainted with all the canons and their rules ; also the *system of canons as it is set forth in the book of science*. He must be able to compose a piece for himself, and be able to give an explanation of every part of it : such as every division and subdivision ; every quantity and rest, and every change of the drawings, and key-notes, *hidden and apparent* ; and to show them forth warranted from his own performance, musically and masterly, so that the doctors and chief minstrels may conscientiously adjudge and elect him to be an author and master in science.

The tunes which are named on the mixed or minor key are thirty-one in number ; those on the *sharp* key, A, twenty-seven ; those on the *flat* key, F, ten. The contending concords, named on the mixed key, B, are eleven ; the concords in the flat key, F, seven, and those on the sharp key, A, eighteen.

That no pupil compose a song without showing it to his master, to know from his judgment that it be correct, before it be sung aloud to anyone, that it may not bring shame either on the master or the pupil.

Bards and minstrels are to be of a friendly conversation, peaceable, obliging, humble, and fond of doing good offices ; and all who are true subjects of the King and his magistrates should countenance and patronize the bards and minstrels.

The pupils to inquire of their masters, a month before each festival, where they are to go, lest too many go to the same place ; and that but one go to a person whose income does not exceed *ten pounds* (!), and two to him who has *twenty pounds* !

Order of Bards and Minstrels.—There are eight kinds of bards and minstrels : four graduated, and four frivolous.

The first four are—1. Bards who wear the band of their order ; 2. Harpers ; 3. Performers on the crwth ; 4. Vocalists. The four kinds of frivolous ones are—1. The piper ; 2. The juggler ;

* Vol. ii., p. 110.

reputed to be a transcript of 'the music of the Britons, as settled by a Congress, or meeting of masters of music, by order of Gryffydd ab Cynan, Prince of Wales, about the year 1100, with some of the most ancient of the Britons, supposed to have been handed down to us from the British bards.' The document is in letters with a line between the treble and bass. It contains pieces for the harp in full counterpoint. The music is written in a notation by letters of the alphabet, and is so curious that an

3. The drummer ; 4. The fiddler, or player on the *crwth* with three strings. The gratuity of each of these is one penny, and they are to perform standing. The singer ought to know how to tune a harp, or *crwth*, and accurately sing several musical lessons through their regular parts. He should also be acquainted with the four-and-twenty metres of poetry, and be able to correct any old piece of poetry which he may receive incorrect from another. He should likewise know how to serve from the kitchen to the table of a person of dignity and power, and to carve every fowl that comes before him. And his office at a royal wedding is to serve at the table of the bride ; a white covering is to be about the harp or *crwth* which he brings with him.

The Club-head Vocalist is one who sings without being able to play on an instrument. He is to stand in the middle of the hall, and beat time with his club, and sing a poem or ode with the beats.

Royal Weddings.—A notice of a year and a day is given to the bards to prepare themselves to attend royal weddings ; and the chief minstrel is appointed the *butt* of the rest, and he gives them an entertaining subject to exercise their poetical talents upon. After dinner the chief minstrel sits in a chair, and those who put questions to him stand. They are permitted to say against him, in poetry, anything they choose, and on the morrow he answers them on the subject for the amusement of the company.

example may well be reproduced, together with the learned historian's reproductions in modern notation.

MOST ANCIENT SPECIMENS OF WELSH MUSICAL NOTATION EXTANT.

Kor Sinaen 1011011-1011011			
g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.
g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.
g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.

Translation in Modern Notation.

g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.
g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.
g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.	g. g. g. g. g. g.

Translation in Modern Notation.

$\bar{\bar{s}}$											
\bar{s}											
\bar{g}											
\bar{g}											

*Translation in Modern Notation.**

Dr. Burney considers that the harmonies were added by the transcriber,[†] but such a supposition seems improbable, since it would defeat the purpose of transcribing the manuscript—viz., to show the state of music at the time of the conference. Had the transcriber modernized the music, he would in all probability have modernized the notation. The honesty of the transcriber is not doubted, so that the music of this MS. may be safely regarded as the

* The patriotic Owen Jones Myvyr first published these specimens in the 'Archæology of Wales,' a valuable work in three volumes, printed at an expense of £2,000.

† Robert ap Haw of Bodwigen, in the Isle of Anglesea, from William Penllyn's book. William Penllyn was among the successful candidates on the harp at the Eisteddfod, or session of the bards and minstrels appointed in the ninth year of Queen Elizabeth's reign at Caerwys, in North Wales, where he was elected one of the chief bards or teachers of instrumental music.

genuine Welsh music which the existing bards had in the tenth century, counterpoint and all.*

Unhappily, William of Malmesbury, when he comes to the reign of William Rufus (1087-1100), chronicles a different story to that of William the Conqueror's care for the churches. According to the chronicler, the rites and honours of the Church were brought to a low ebb, too humiliating and disgraceful to contemplate, and though several important churches were built or restored in this reign, such was owing more to the piety and liberality of their wealthy founders than to any encouragement accorded by the King. Most of these benefactors were powerful Norman Churchmen who followed upon the Conquest, imbued with a deep love for church-building, and bent upon making the Church a power not less formidable than the State. Several of the names identified with these reconstructions show how the Norman ecclesiastics were gradually strengthening their position.

* It is to be regretted that any doubts have grown around this Welsh MS., which, when Dr. Burney wrote, was in the possession of Richard Morris, Esq., of the Tower. Early musical MSS. are all too scanty, and have suffered deplorably in this country. Of course they were particularly liable to destruction, because, as notation improved, the older MSS. would become illegible, and therefore useless to the generality of musicians. The blind zeal of conquerors and bodies like the Puritans led to the destruction of any parchment or paper partaking of a musical character.

About this time lived Henry of Huntingdon (*circa* 1083-1155), to whose industry we are indebted for much relating to social life, and especially to music in England. He was Archdeacon of Huntingdon, and his chief work, the 'Historia Anglorum,' which extends to the reign of King Stephen, is especially valuable, inasmuch as it incorporates the narratives of popular songs and stories the originals of which have been lost. He is not always an exact chronicler, but as he went to the old songs of the people for many of his facts, he will always be entitled to respect on that account.

Contemporary with this chronicler was Ordericus Vitalis, born in 1075 A.D., who is associated with musical doings at this time. He was sent to a **Ordericus Vitalis.** school at Shrewsbury, and, among other matters, was taught chanting under a priest of royal blood, named Siward. Later on he went to St. Evroult, an abbey buried in the forests of Normandy, from which religious house he, forty years afterwards, wrote: 'I have cheerfully borne the light yoke of the Lord for forty-two years, and walking in the ways of God with my fellow monks . . . have endeavoured to perfect myself in the devices of the Church and ecclesiastical duties.'

Winchester Cathedral, which has always been associated with the social life of this country, and therefore with its religious and musical growth, was the point for which the Conqueror's youngest son,

Henry I. (1100-1135 A.D.), made when he left his brother William's dead body where it fell through Tyrrel's shaft in the New Forest. He seized the ecclesiastical treasure wherewith to ease **Henry I.** the way to a speedy coronation in London, where, by gifts and bribes, he was crowned King, while Robert was away in the Holy Land with Peter the Hermit's Crusade. The coronation took place at Westminster Abbey to the chanting of the Gregorian Mass and Canticle music by the Norman monks and singing-men. The exiled Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, whom King Rufus had banished, was recalled ; and that same energy for church-building

which had distinguished his father and brother marked also the character and reign of Henry, who no doubt saw, as they had done, the wisdom of strengthening the Norman ecclesiastical reach and influence.

We hear little relating to music in general in this reign ; but one incident that stands recorded redounds but little to the credit or magnanimity of the Monarch. A luckless Norman minstrel, Luke de



HENRY I.

Barre by name, fell into his power, and Henry determined to make him suffer. 'He has never done me homage,' said the King, 'but he has fought against me, and has besides composed facetious and indecent songs upon me, and sung them publicly, thus often raising the loud laughs of my worst enemies.' So saying, the King ordered the minstrel's eyes to be pulled out; but the terrified musician escaped from his tormentors, and, rushing thereto, dashed his brains out against the wall.

Matilda, Queen of Henry I., was, according to William of Malmesbury, so fond of music that she expended all her revenues upon it, and oppressed her tenants to pay her minstrels.

The name of one important musician that reaches us is that of Rahere. He was the King's *jongleur*, and founded the priory of St. Bartholomew, Smith-

Rahere, Jongleur to Henry I. field, which church, as recently restored, shows something of its original beauty.

From this foundation it is clear that a royal jester, minstrel, or *jongleur*—whatever we may term him—was no mean or ill-paid personage in Henry I.'s day, for there are probably few among favoured musicians of to-day whose earnings would enable them to build and endow such a foundation as is the St. Bartholomew's charity.* As Henry I.

* In the history of Thomas of Reading, Rahere is said to have retained 'a company of minstrels, *i.e.*, fiddlers, who played with silver horns.' These would also be the King's servants, under the

had Rahere attached as *jongleur* to his Court, we may assume that musicians filled similar positions in the households of all great personages of the time, so that social music was by no means discredited this while by the nobility in England. We may be sure, too, that the old love for domestic music remained as strong as ever among the lower orders, and that around the hearths of many a remote Saxon and British homestead—far removed from the new fashions of the Normans—the family circle consoled itself with the musical delights, vocal and instrumental, which its members had intuitively acquired, and which their forefathers had practised long before them.

John, surnamed 'of Salisbury,' to distinguish him from other Johns, belongs to this reign. The name is so closely identified with early English music that

John of Salisbury. it deserves notice. Born about the year 1110, John went as a youth to Paris. He attended Abelard's lectures at the Mont St. Geneviève, and became a scholar in the Montier la Celle Abbey, in the diocese of Troyes.

As secretary of Theobald, Archbishop of Canterbury, he came to know Becket, the Chancellor of England, of whose will he was an executor. In 1176 he was Bishop of Chartres, a high post for

direction of Rahere, and constituting a band of musicians who would be required chiefly on the great occasions, and other than those when Rahere performed privately for the King's amusement.

one to have risen to who, in Henry I.'s time, was, as an old chronicle puts it, 'being handed over to a clergyman's charge to learn his Psalms.'

From John of Salisbury we learn that the great ones of his time imitated Nero in his extravagance towards musicians. He avers that they 'prostituted their favour by bestowing it on minstrels and buffoons.' John died October 25, 1180.

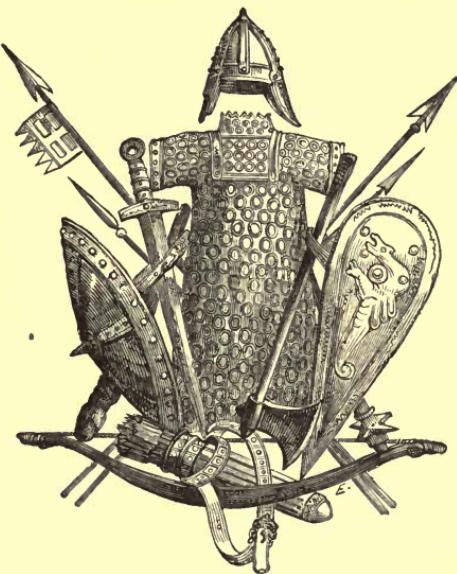
The following passage which the same John penned about the year 1170 affords some idea of the pleasure the people of the time took in part-singing :

'The rites of religion are now profaned by music; and it seems as if no other use were made of it than to corrupt the mind by wanton modulations, effeminate inflexions, and frittered notes and periods, even in the *Penetralia*, or sanctuary, itself. The senseless crowd, delighted with all these vagaries, imagine they hear a concert of Sirens, in which the performers strive to imitate the notes of nightingales and parrots, not those of men; sometimes descending to the bottom of the scale, sometimes mounting to the summit; now softening, and now enforcing the tones, repeating passages, mixing in such a manner the grave sounds with the more grave, and the acute with the most acute, that the astonished and bewildered ear is unable to distinguish one voice from another.'

John was clearly one of the old conservative

school in music—apt to grow excited and to speak vehemently respecting the new-fangled musical notions which he saw, slowly but surely, creeping in.

During the terrible civil wars between the kind, engaging, but ambitious Stephen (1135-1154 A.D.) and Henry's daughter, the Empress Maude, the country was little disposed for practising music. The hauberk or coat of mail, lance, with sling and bow, claimed more attention than the harp and viol, which were placed aside awhile, when, according to an old record, 'all England wore a face of desolation and misery.'



NORMAN ARMOUR.

Multitudes abandoned their beloved country, and went into voluntary exile; others, forsaking their own houses, built wretched huts in churchyards, hoping for protection from the sacredness of the place. Whole families, after sustaining life as long as they could by eating herbs, roots, and the flesh of dogs and horses, at last died of hunger; and you

might see many pleasant villages without a single inhabitant.*

The reign of Stephen witnessed an extraordinary extension of the monastic system, which meant a corresponding growth of ecclesiastical music, and possibly of domestic music, if the monks elected to enjoy its



STEPHEN.

practice. The exercise of the art, whether in its sacred or secular form, afforded little ground of offence to noble or serf, and it is extremely improbable that the art fell away even during a period when anarchy reigned unbridled in Britain. Certainly Church music did not decline. Happily the

clergy and churchmen were diligent. With sword in hand they laid the stone and guided the trowel, so that even amid the deplorable struggles which marked Stephen's reign, when the work of devastation must have extended to, and effaced the beauty of, many a church, new ones sprang up with all that frequency and extent of beautiful architectural dimension and detail which has made this period a glorious one in the history of constructive building art and ornament.

* 'Gesta Regni Stephani.'

The stern and stirring Norman period is not without interest and value as a phase in our national musical history. It is true that it has furnished us with little actual musical material in the shape of manuscripts of either sacred or secular art. As far as regards sacred music this can be explained: this, unlike secular music, was liberally transcribed and duplicated, but it is only the fewest who, in the matter of books, think of any age other than that in which they live. If book and manuscript serve the purpose of their own generation, the majority of mankind are content not to trouble about the wants of another. Further, one has only to have some acquaintance with the wear and tear, avoidable and unavoidable, to which choir-books in daily use are subjected by choristers, to understand the discrepancy that would follow between the wearing-out and the duplicating processes, especially at a period when copying had to be done by the slow art of penmanship.

Still, this Norman epoch has given us the minstrel element—of which more anon—which, although it existed in England long before, and long after, the Norman Conquest, is particularly identified with this time, when a great stimulus was given to secular music, and especially to that form of it known as the art of the *improvisatore*, a spontaneous music and song which the genius and grace of the

minstrel could call up as if by magic, just as occasion required.

Then we must not forget such unmistakable and material help to the cause of music as was supplied in the prolific erection of churches wherever the quick eye of the Norman churchman discovered a choice site; the situations of many of our oldest churches well attest the shrewd judgment and discretion which these ecclesiastics displayed in this matter. The more churches there were the more sacred music there was bound to be. In Fitz-Stephen's contemporary description, written a few years later (about 1174 A.D.), there were as many as one hundred and thirty-nine churches in London. Throughout the country they were relatively numerous, so that here alone would be a great outlet for musical exercise, since King and Queen, chivalrous noble and pious lady, Bishop, Abbot, priest, and commoner—all flocked to the church for Matins, Mass, and Evensong.

Perhaps there was little else than the Gregorian music to the Mass, and the chants to the Canticles, Litanies, and Misereres, to be heard, but the music and the services would be on a scale corresponding with the extent of the abbeys and churches, and as many of these were of great splendour we may conclude that the heritage—as regards its spirit if not its letter—which the Roman Church bequeathed at a later period to the Protestant Church was one that

was truly worthy of the high purpose which it fulfilled as an accompaniment and adornment to the office of Divine service.

This Church music undoubtedly existed, and was used and practised daily in the principal towns and centres ; while secular art was kept alive by the minstrel or bard, who, either comfortably housed in his patron's hall or castle, or moving from place to place in the country, was as jealous of his art as were the ecclesiastics of theirs.

This same Fitz-Stephen, in his graphic account of London during the reign of Henry II., describes the town amusements at the several seasons of the year. He particularly mentions the water and riverside revels at Easter, where 'the maidens as soon as the moon rises dance to the guitar and with their nimble movements shake the ground.'

Nor was this all. What of the people's music and all that uncontrolled harmony and melody which was as prevalent among the various classes then as it is now ? We are wont to keep little reckoning of all this natural music which comes and goes in the case of each one of us with a lifetime. But it exists around us, though all unnoticed and neglected by the historian. In these early Norman times men and women, maidens and youths, possessed their wide and varying sentiments just as they do now. Of course they broke into song. The lover with his plaint, the nursery lullaby, the maid at her wheel, the peasant's drone as he tilled the soil, the milk-

maid's song—all these were then as now. And was every knight and lady dumb? Did the guard as he strode the lonely battlement never hum a tune to lighten the weight of his coat of mail or hauberk; or when these were removed for a season, would he not have broken out into some song—rude or polished—that had grown up with him from his childhood? Surely there was all this untutored art in its many thousand shades of emotion and expression. There was the same human heart then as now, and that fount of all that is joyous and all that is sad will, in every season, overflow and pour forth its message in many a strange mood and key through that chaste and adequate medium which music alone supplies.

PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES.

- 'Life of Alfred the Great' - - - - - Spelman.
- 'Chronicles' - - - - - Ingulph.
- 'History of Ely' - - - - - Bentham.
- 'English Songs' - - - - - Warton.
- 'Popular Music of the Olden Time' - Chappell.
- Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.
- 'History of Music' - - - - - Burney.
- 'Norman Conquest' - - - - - Freeman.
- 'Dissertation on Romance and Minstrelsy' - Ritson.
- 'Short History of the English People' - Green.
- '*Roman de Rou*' - - - - - Wace.
- 'Specimens of Various Styles of Music' - Crotch.
- 'Chronicle' - - - - - Holinshed.
- '*Historia Anglorum*' - - - - - Henry of Huntingdon.
- '*Gesta Regni Stephani*' -
- 'Social England' - - - - - Cassell.
- 'Dictionary of Music and Musicians' - Grove.

CHAPTER VII.

MINSTRELSY FROM NORMAN TO LANCASTRIAN TIMES.

Minstrelsy—The ‘Waits’—Origin of ‘Minstrel’—The Norman Settlement and Minstrelsy—Condition of Saxon Art at the Conquest—Ritson on Minstrels—Le Grand on Minstrels—Origin of the Norman Minstrel—Taillefer at Senlac—The Song of Roland—Dr. Burney’s Version—Dr. Crotch’s Version—Effect of Minstrelsy—Annuity to Galfridus—Richard I. favours the Minstrels—Blondel, his favourite Minstrel—The Crusades—King Richard imprisoned in Germany—Traced by Blondel singing the King’s *Romanza*—Gauclém’s Song on the Death of Richard I.—Privileges granted to the Minstrels by Charter—Chester Midsummer Fair Grant—Social Employments for Minstrels—At a Wedding Ceremony—Certain Head or ‘King’ Minstrels—Recognition by Henry III.—Edward I. saved by his Minstrel in the Holy Land—Reputed Massacre of Welsh Bards—Grand Minstrel Performances—Notable Minstrels and their Pseudonyms—Fees and Remunerations to the Minstrels—Some Liberal Patrons—Edward II.’s Encouragement of Minstrelsy—Real Estate Grants—Dress of the Minstrels—Their Stone Carvings—The Minstrels’ Pillars in Beverley Minster and St. Mary’s Church, Beverley—John of Gaunt’s Grant to the Minstrels of Tutbury—The Abuse of the Craft—The First Serious Check to Minstrelsy—The Downfall of the Minstrels—A Mummary Procession from Newgate to Lambeth—Lingering Signs and Effects of Minstrelsy.

MINSTREL! The word is fuller with music than many a more pronounced term in modern tone art

phraseology. Its mere mention thrills the imaginative mind into a realm of fancy concerning a singularly beautiful and romantic phase of early English musical

Min- life. How the school-boy and girl loves **strelys.** to linger over the brief references to the minstrel and his art in the primer or history-book! How, as we grow older, the minstrel has still a charm for us ; and whenever the word 'minstrelsy' meets our eyes, all our musical nerves and instincts seem to vibrate within us ! The music of the 'waits,' rough and coarse as it too often is—a musical feature which still clings to the Yule season—never fails to arrest the attention of old and young as a remnant, it is thought, of ancient English music and custom. Unfortunately the terms 'minstrel' and 'minstrelsy' have been indiscriminately used for every sort of musician and performance, of whatever age. We have to consider the minstrels here as a great body of itinerant performers who flourished between the Conquest and three centuries later.

Popularly the 'waits' of to-day are regarded as minstrels of the kind which obtained long before music became that great art which early musicians like the Elizabethan composers made it ; and many people there are who see more music in the snatches of tune which startle the crisp night air, beneath our window-casements, at Christmas time, than they perceive in the performance of a modern symphony. We need not disagree. It would be harsh to dispel

an illusion which springs out of the fulness of a good heart—as all hearts are at the Christmas season. It is the odour of the old minstrelsy which flavours the modern imitation, and for that reason we are content to overlook not a little that is musically bad in these midnight musicians. The modern 'waits' and carol-singers are a survival—slight, perhaps—of old time methods which no one wishes to see die out, although it is to be regretted that the 'artists' at these nocturnal musical performances do not treat us to something of a higher order than is their wont. The extravagant raspings of flute and viol, and crude vocal harmony—generally extemporizations—are only to be regarded charitably, and no one, we hope, would seriously think or judge of musical England by such searchings and gropings.

The minstrel—a name we do not get until after the coming of the Normans, though in person he was here with the Saxons—was distinguished for his skill in instrumental music only, and it was left to him to borrow his story from any source—provided it pleased his patrons. Many of these English musicians could and did compose songs themselves, but as in the lapse of years the art declined, the later singers fell back upon the compositions of others. It was ever rare, however, to find a minstrel who could not invent a few stanzas as occasion and opportunity required. We must not hurriedly pass them by, for they were a great feature

in early English social life. To them, too, we owe most of the old heroic ballads which we cherish. 'The minstrels,' says Percy, 'were the successors of the ancient bards who under different names were admired and revered from the earliest ages, among the people of Gaul, Britain, Ireland, and the North, and, indeed, by almost all the first inhabitants of Europe, whether of Celtic or Gothic race; but by none more than by our own Teutonic ancestors, particularly by all the Danish tribes.*'

The term 'minstrel,' from the Norman French *ministralx*, came into use in England with the Conquest with that great influx of the minstrel

Norman Minstrelsy. element that followed in the van of the army which William, Duke of Normandy, brought with him (1066 A.D.). It is from the Norman settlement that the history of the minstrel, who, as we shall see, long survived in this country, conveniently dates. No doubt the Briton and the Saxon possessed a musician who, under another name, performed precisely similar offices for the State and the people as did the Norman minstrel; both countries' musicians were equally fortunate, too, in the favour and esteem in which they were regarded by the people at large, and the patron nobles in particular.

There was little, if any, artistic superiority in one over the other; and, save in the matter of the

* 'Reliques of Ancient English Poetry' (Percy).

tongue they spoke, one national musician was very like another. Throughout North-West Europe there was, and had long been, this musical necessity—a performer who, whether under the name of bard, scóp, scald, or minstrel, played much the same *rôle*, and was similarly regarded in whichever country he trod and travelled. Thus he was a ‘minstrel’ wherever he lived, and wherever he went, and writers have not troubled to make any more careful distinction when referring to either the British bard and harper, or to the later harper-scald of the Saxon.

The Normans did not introduce poetry and song into England, as is generally supposed, but the visitors from Northern France gave a great impetus to impromptu music here. The art was already in a sturdy state when the descendant of Rollo the Ranger stepped on English soil to win immortal fame as the ‘Conqueror.’ That independent style of melody which we have seen was inherent in and peculiar to the ancient Britons still lived, as do traces of it even to this day. Nor was Anglo-Saxon music withering. All England was still alive with the doings of King Alfred, who had explored the Danish camp. The old Saxon gleemen plied their trade for centuries after the Conquest, for the Norman music for many years affected not so much the lower orders—who could not understand it—as the nobility. Thus it was for awhile an art for the knight and patrician—not for the plebeian—so that

the common music at the rural entertainments, fairs, and such like, long remained English and not Norman. The 'fun of the fair,' with the jigs and the dance tunes, were English features for many centuries after the arrival of the Conqueror. When we meet with the Normans, however, we not only become possessed of the name 'minstrel,' that has been inaptly applied to the travelling musician of a much earlier period, but we are introduced to much of the habit and custom of the minstrel as he existed in a flourishing land just outside our own.

With this fresh performer a new and different character of music was introduced into England, which mixed well with the native and Saxon art. Like many other of the Norman influences this new musical element was destined to have a considerable and permanent effect upon English musical art. One result of it was the increased favour accorded to secular music and the minstrel's art in particular. So much was this the case that minstrels became a distinct order of men for many years after the Norman Conquest, men who gained their livelihood principally by singing verses to the harp at the houses of the great. Further, the Norman minstrel brought the romantic spirit largely into play, and weaved it inextricably into our national lyrical art. This was a great gain.

'The *menestrier*, *menestrel*, or minstrel,' says Ritson in his 'Dissertation on Romance and Min-

strelsy,' was 'he who accompanied his song by a musical instrument, both the words and the melody being occasionally furnished by himself, and occasionally by others.' The same author is of opinion that there were different orders of minstrels. He writes: 'That the different professors of minstrelsy were, in ancient times, distinguished by names appropriated to their respective pursuits, cannot reasonably be disputed, though it may be difficult to prove. The *troueur*, *trouverre*, or *rymour*, was he who composed *romans*, *contes*, *fabliaux*, *chansons* and *lais*; and those who confined themselves to the composition of *contes* and *fabliaux*, obtained the appellation of *contours*, *conteours*, or *fabliers*'.

The minstrels, firmly established in England by the Norman Conquest, flourished as long after as the sixteenth century. They became a real factor in the national musical character, and it will be evident that no such body of men could exercise their profession in the palace of the king, the hall of the noble, and in the outdoor world, without deeply impressing all who heard the song and music. What was sung and played would cling with remarkable tenacity to and operate upon the minds and actions of all who heard it. At the outset we ought to possess an adequate idea of the minstrel and the many-sided nature of his calling. This has been well set out by Le Grand. 'This profession,' he says, 'required a multiplicity of attainments, and of talents, which one

would at this day have some difficulty to find re-united, and we have more reason to be astonished at them in these days of ignorance : for besides all the songs old and new, besides the current anecdotes, the tales and fabliaux, which they piqued themselves on knowing, besides the romances of the time which it behoved them to know and to possess in part, they could declaim, sing, compose music, play on several instruments, and accompany them. Frequently even were they authors, and made themselves the pieces they uttered.'

He sang the lighter and shorter chansons, and that he was a skilled musician is clear from the following extract from an Anglo-French poem :

‘ Ge sai juglere de vielé*
 Si sai de muse† et de frestele‡
 Et de la harpe et de chifonie§
 De la gigue|| de larmonie¶
 Et el saltiere** et en la rote.’††

The minstrel was with the English and Normans the successor of a previous musician. William's ancestor Rollo hailed from Norway and Denmark, where Norwegians held the scalds in high esteem. Many of these went into the Norman duchy to become Normans, and to change their musical title to that of *minstrel*—the name which they brought to England, and which has ever since remained here.

* Viol. † Bagpipes. † Flageolet, or Flute.

§ Hurdy-gurdy. || Fiddle. ¶ Tambourine.

** Dulcimer played with the fingers. †† Zither.

From the Domesday Book we learn of the bounty of William I. towards his private joculator or bard in Gloucestershire—‘ Bardic Joculator Regis ’; while a still more famous minstrel’s fame and reputation have made him quite a national figure.

The name of one warrior-musician more eminent, more daring than the rest that followed William has come down through history. This was the herald-

Taillefer. minstrel Taillefer. His intrepidity and courage as a soldier matched his skill in music, and beseeching his ducal patron to be allowed to do so, he led the onslaught on King Harold and the English upon that memorable day when the sun went down at Senlac, and the dead bodies of the Saxon King and his hus-carls were mantled by the night. The preliminary to the onset was brilliant and characteristic. The fearless, careless minstrel rode before the Norman foot-soldiers playing with his spear, casting it, indeed, in jaunty fashion into the air and catching it again by its iron head, the while he chanted songs in praise of Roland by Charlemagne and other heroes of France. Roland’s feats and achievements in wars with the Saracens well qualified him to frame a stirring battle-song, the grandeur and stimulating nature of which it is said aided the Conqueror greatly on this memorable field-day. Three times the hero-minstrel did thus; then, poising the mighty weapon, he hurled it with such great force that it fell into the midst of his

enemies, and, fixing one Saxon, brought him to the dust. Then came the awful rush—Taillefer, the first to strike a blow, was the first on William's side to fall on English soil.

The 'Song of Roland' ('Chanson de Roland'), though often referred to in musical and general literature, may well receive some notice here. It

The Song of Roland. was originally composed if not by, at least in honour of, Roland, Count of Mans and Knight of Blairs—eight feet in stature—who was slain in the Valley of Roncesvalles as he was leading his uncle Charlemagne's army from Spain to France (A.D. 778). A version of the story was made in a poem in the Anglo-Norman tongue of Turold, an English minstrel, *circa* 1140 A.D. As in most of the early romances, the largest portion of this poem consists of battle scenes, which are told with somewhat of Homeric vigour. It was obviously an earlier version, however, that Taillefer chanted. Unfortunately not a little uncertainty and misrepresentation have gathered round this famous item of history, both as regards its words and tune or notation. The celebrated composition, or one bearing the title, whatever or whosesoever it was, was preserved as late as the fourteenth century, when it was sung at the Battle of Poictiers (1356 A.D.). There the French soldiers sang it within hearing of their King, John, and upon his reproaching one of them with singing it at a time when there were no

Rolands left, the murmur went round that Rolands would still be found if they had a Charlemagne at their head.

There are several metrical romances on the subject of Charlemagne of considerable antiquity still extant, and one of these may, possibly, be the 'Song of Roland.' It is at least curious that while this particular composition should have escaped the vigilance of historians, another song, a 'Lament,' also inspired by the famous Charlemagne (742-814 A.D.), and written in memory of his death, is still in existence.

The story of Taillefer is not mentioned by any contemporary historian, and whether Turpin, Archbishop of Rheims (died 800 A.D.), who appears to have been first responsible for the narrative of Roland, was himself relating the prowess of Roland in his own words, or repeating those which had emanated from Charlemagne's nephew himself, is a point which will probably never be cleared up. In the fifteenth century there was a song entitled '*L'Homme Arme*' which was popular, and Dr. Burney (1726-1814), our famous, but not always accurate musical historian, who wrote long afterwards, conjectured that it was the '*Chanson de Roland*' M. Bottée de Toulmon proved it to be only a love-song, however, composed by Tinctor, the Belgian composer (1434-1520). The same authority considers the so-called 'Song of Roland'

to have been a '*Chanson de Geste*,' a metrical historical romance. This is not unlikely. Great men who were scholars, from Charlemagne downwards, were wont to collect and learn by heart all that tended to perpetuate the memory of the wars and acts of the Kings who had preceded them. Such fragments soon grew bulky, and led to such compositions as another reputed '*Chanson de Roland*,' a copy of which is in the Bodleian Library, containing something like four thousand verses. It is needless to remark that Taillefer would scarcely have been burdened with such a weight of learning when he played that famous *rôle* which cost him his life before the Saxon battle-axe. What he sang, with his loud voice, probably were such parts of songs of the period in praise of Charlemagne, Roland, and other heroes as he had learned, selections which would be calculated to stir the fire of the Norman soldiers, and animate them for the terrible fray immediately before them. They were pitched in French rhyme, something akin to the following, which Wace, the Jersey man, and typical representative of the Norman-French poets in England, sang :

‘Taillifer, qui mult bien chantout
Sor on cheval qui tost alout,
Devant le Duc alout chantant
De Karlemaigne e de Rollant,
E d’Oliver e des vassals
Qui morurent en Rencevals.’*

* ‘*Roman de Rou.*’

Which, translated, runs as follows :

' Telfair, who well could sing a strain
 Upon a horse that went amain,
 Before the Duke rode singing loud
 Of Charlemagne and Rouland good,
 Of Oliver and those vassals
 Who lost their life at Roncevals.'

Dr. Burney felt constrained to print some sort of version of a Roland song in his bulky 'History of Music,' and based one on some fragments for which he was indebted to the Marquis de Paulmy, but neither the words nor the tune make any claim to, or indeed possess, the merest flavour of antiquity. This strain is amusing, and on that account, and as furnishing a specimen of Dr. Burney's powers as a happy translator, are worth reproducing *in extenso* :

MILITARY SONG ON THE FRENCH CHAMPION, ROLAND.

I.

' Let every valiant son of Gaul
 Sing Roland's deeds, her greatest glory,
 Whose name will stoutest foes appal,
 And feats inspire for future story.
 Roland in childhood had no fears,
 Was full of tricks, nor knew a letter :
 Which, though it cost his mother tears,
 His father cried, "So much the better !
 We'll have him for a soldier bred,
 His strength and courage let us nourish ;
 If bold the heart, though wild the head,
 In war he'll but the better flourish."
 Let every, etc.

2.

‘ Roland, arriv’d at man’s estate,
 Prov’d that his father well admonish’d :
 For then his prowess was so great
 That all the world became astonish’d.
 Battalions, squadrons he could break,
 And singly give them such a beating,
 That seeing him whole armies quake,
 And nothing think, but of retreating.

Let every, etc.

3.

‘ In single combat ’twas the same :
 To him all foes were on a level :
 For ev’ryone he overcame,
 If giant, sorcerer, monster, devil.
 His arm no danger e’er could stay,
 Nor was the goddess Fortune fickle,
 For if his foe he did not slay,
 He left him in a rueful pickle.

Let every, etc.

4.

‘ In scaling walls with highest glee,
 He first the ladder fixt, then mounted :
 Let him, my boys, our model be,
 Who men or perils never counted.
 At night with scouts he watch would keep,
 With heart more gay than one in million,
 Or else on knapsack sounder sleep
 Than gen’ral in his proud pavilion.

Let every, etc.

5.

‘ On stubborn foes he vengeance wreak’d,
 And laid about him like a Tartar ;
 But if for mercy once they squeak’d,
 He was the first to grant them quarter.

The battle won, of Roland's soul
Each milder virtue took possession ;
To vanquish'd foes he o'er a bowl
His heart surrender'd at discretion.

Let every, etc.

6.

'When ask'd why Frenchmen wield the brand,
And dangers ev'ry day solicit,
He said, 'Tis Charlemagne's command,
To whom our duty is implicit ;
His ministers and chosen few
No doubt have weigh'd these things in private,
Let us his enemies subdue,
'Tis all that soldiers e'er should drive at.
Let every, etc.

7.

'Roland like Christian true would live,
Was seen at Mass, and in procession ;
And freely to the poor would give,
Nor did he always shun confession.
But Bishop Turpin had decreed
(His council in each weighty matter)
That 'twas a good and pious deed
His country's foes to drub and scatter.
Let every, etc.

8.

'At table, Roland, ever gay,
Would eat and drink, and laugh and rattle ;
But all was in a prudent way,
On days of guard, or eve of battle.
For still to king and country true,
He held himself their constant debtor,
And only drank in season due
When to transact he'd nothing better.
Let every, etc.

9.

‘ To captious blades he ne’er would bend,
 Who quarrels sought on slight pretences :
 Though he, to social joys a friend,
 Was slow to give or take offences.
 None e’er had cause his arm to dread,
 But those who wrong’d his prince or nation,
 On whom whene’er to combat led
 He dealt out death and devastation.

Let every, etc.

10.

‘ Roland too much ador’d the fair,
 From whom e’en heroes are defenceless,
 And by a queen of beauty rare
 He all at once was render’d senseless.
 One hapless morn she left the knight,
 Who, when he miss’d her, grew quite frantic ;
 Our pattern let him be in fight,
 His love was somewhat too romantic.

Let every, etc.

11.

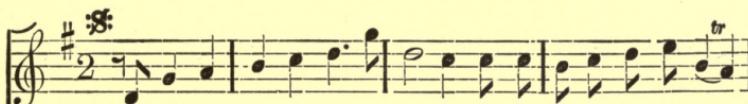
‘ His mighty uncle, Charles the Great,
 Who Rome’s imperial sceptre wielded,
 Both early dignity and state,
 With high command, to Roland yielded.
 Yet though a gen’ral, count, and peer,
 Roland’s kind heart all pride could smother ;
 For each brave man, from van to rear,
 He treated like a friend and brother.

Let every, etc.

To these words he assigned the following tune, which is singularly deficient in those stirring properties which Taillefer’s song must have possessed to have affected the soldiers, or to have won the

commendation that tradition has assigned to it. It contains, too, some horrible consecutive octaves.

CHANSON DE ROLAND.



Sol-dats François chantons Roland, de son Pa - is il fut la Gloi-



re; Le nom d'un Guerrier si vail - lant est le sig - nal de la victoi-



re. Ro-lan d e - tant pe-tit Gar-çon fai-soit sou-vent pleur-er sa



Mere, Il é-toit vif et polis-son tant mieux, disoit Monsieur son Pè-



re; A la force il joint la va-leur, nous en fer-ons un mi - li - tai -

re. Mau - vaise tête a - vec bon cœur c'est pour re-us-

sir à la guer - re.

Of much truer ring is the following harmonized melody, which unquestionably possesses an old-time character, and is sufficiently inspiriting to have stirred less impressionable beings than the picked soldiers that flocked under William's banner, a holy banner that had received the blessing of the Pope himself, and beneath which the Norman priests attached to the army, and the soldiers, sang psalms

and chanted litanies and misereres the whole long night preceding Senlac :

CHANSON ROLAND.

Dr. Crotch has printed the above tune in the third edition of his 'Specimens of Various Styles of Music,' but he does not trace its source, and is unable to vouch for its authenticity.

As the Norman settlement proceeded, the music of Norman France became more and more distributed among the English. It leavened the

musical inclinations of the inhabitants, but it can never be urged that it displaced the old art of the country. This remained as permanent as ever

**Influence
of the
Norman
Music.**

within the breast of Briton and Saxon. The Norman influence lent some polish to the Brito-Saxon art, undoubtedly, but it did not dispel the old musical spirit of the natives, or mar the enthusiasm with which they were wont to recount in song the glorious achievements and records of past ages. Great dwellings existed which, if not entitled to rank as baronial hall and castle, yet were scarcely ever without their pedestal galleries for the minstrels, from which at feasts, and upon auspicious occasions, singers and instrumentalists delighted the assembled guests :

‘ Illumining the vaulted roof
A thousand torches flam’d aloof ;
From many a cup, with golden gleam,
Sparkled the red metheglin’s stream ;
To grace the gorgeous festival,
Along the lofty window’d hall,
The storied tapestry was hung.
With minstrelsy the rafters rung,
Of harps that from reflected light
From the proud gallery glitter’d bright.
To crown the banquet’s solemn close,
Themes of British glory rose ;
And to the strings of various chimes
Attemper’d the heroic rhymes.’

The minstrel’s was, indeed, a privileged calling, and all the recognition accorded to it—and this was

no small measure—grew out of the natural love for music in the hearts of the people. No matter the country, no matter the people, everyone then, as now, loved music *per se*, and whatever was the form in which it was presented, it was welcomed with such heartiness and such unmistakable signs of pleasure that no one was in doubt.

This is easy to imagine. The Western world was emerging from a state of night into day. The change was gradual, but it was real, and the tendency of it all was towards a 'sweetness and light' yet imperfect even in our day. Music was a great factor, and it appealed to the heart of noble and serf alike. Wherever the minstrels took music, there it soon was in the ascendant. Especially was this the case in England. For many years, indeed, is the history of our country associated with the minstrel in person and practice, and this happy state covered the reigns of many of the English kings. It is a pity that they ever declined. They did so, however, and this mainly from causes which originated from among themselves. They resorted to everything and anything to amuse their patrons, stopping at nothing that would gratify their purses and appetites.

A curious anecdote shows at once the readiness and resource of the minstrel, and the kind of patron with whom he had betimes to deal. Before the minstrel was the jongleur, and the difference is expressed in the following story : A minstrel once appeared at a

castle gate and asked permission to enter and eat. The porter asked him what he was. He replied, 'God's servant.' On this being told to the lord of the castle, he said if that was the case he should not be admitted. When the minstrel heard this, he took the *rôle* of the jongleur and said he was Satan's servant, on which he was told he might enter, 'because he was a good fellow.'

The last state of the jongleur was a sad one indeed. He became a stroller and vagabond, and having to face all sorts of auditors, he often supplemented his musical powers with tricks, sleight of hand, and buffoonery. In a MS. in the British Museum (Add. ii. 694) two jongleurs are represented as dancing in very curious clogs. One plays the viol while the other is performing tricks with a peacock and brandishing a knife. As early as the time of Henry III. (1216-1272), the jongleurs, who sang the songs composed by the trouvères, or troubadours, were falling into disrepute, the genteeler and more talented minstrels being more in accord with the greater civilization of the times.

It is easy to realize that the great wave of romantic musical art which came over with William I. did not disappear with the Norman rule. On the contrary, it became a striking feature in after English social life. Scene after scene is presented wherein the minstrel stands out so prominently as to appear rather strange to us

**Effect of
Min-
strelsy.**

with our present notions. We can hardly fully realize the close relationship that then existed between patron and minstrel, or the sympathy that one had with the other. Minstrelsy was long a power in the land, and the doings of the minstrel and the attention bestowed upon him become items of interest throughout the reigns of several sovereigns. A few instances are worthy of note.

As early as the reign of Henry II. (1154-1189 A.D.) the record has been traced of one Jeffrey, also called Galfridus Citharaedus, who received a corrody or annuity from the Benedictine abbey of Hide, near Winchester, as a reward, no doubt, for the exercise of his musical talents on important occasions. Another name of musical note of this time (1180) which has been preserved, is that of Einion, the priest, who wrote *Dwned*, or Book of Minstrelsy.

The name of the gallant and chivalrous monarch, Richard I., is indelibly associated with minstrelsy in England. A liberal patron of poets and minstrels,

Richard I. he loved sweet music, and could himself and exert the tuneful lyre with cunning **Blondel.** skill. Like the Monarchs of his day, he owned his court of minstrels, where his musical tastes were mainly gratified by a favourite minstrel, whose name was Blondel de Nesle.

This King of many parts ascended the throne in the year 1189. Shortly before, the generous Sultan Saladin had been victorious in the battle of Tiberias,

and had reconquered Jerusalem and the Holy Sepulchre. The European Christians felt it to be their duty to avenge this defeat, and deemed it indispensable to declare war again with Saladin. Richard Cœur de Lion, the most valiant and chivalrous prince of the time, was particularly anxious to show his bravery and his sincere devotion to the holy cause. To be enabled to procure the necessary means,

he not only sold his own jewels and treasures, but disposed of the domains and jewels of the Crown.

‘I would even sell London,’ he said, ‘could I but find a buyer for it.’

Owing to his intrepidity, which had in it a touch of the romantic, and to his innate desire for adventures, he was

called ‘Cœur de Lion’ (Lion-heart), and became one of the most famous and admired heroes of that chivalrous time. His very name was dreaded and feared by the Saracens and the Turks, so that mothers threatened their crying children with it in order to quiet them. When the horses of the Arabs shied or became restive, the riders, in giving them the spur, exclaimed, ‘Dost thou fancy thou canst see King Richard?’ It is scarcely possible to give a



RICHARD I.

more decided proof of Richard’s influence, and the great power his name exercised upon his enemies. The romanticists of the period found something so admirable in the deeds of the chivalrous King that they could not help fancying that Richard was in the actual possession of Kalibur or Escalibor, the magic sword of the great warrior King Arthur; although it is related in other books that, according to the wish of Arthur, his shield-bearers threw his famous sword, after his death, into the sea.

It is the story of the imprisonment of the ‘Lion-hearted’ upon his return from the Crusades, and his subsequent discovery by Blondel, which forms a narrative so attractive to young minds and old in the life of this fearless English King.

During the siege of Ascalon, Richard had offended the Duke Leopold of Austria so greatly that the latter (although not sufficiently brave to demand satisfaction with the sword from such a valorous antagonist as the Lion-hearted Richard) went home, determined to take revenge, without placing himself in any immediate personal danger. He had not long to wait. Leopold had nursed in his breast the remembrance of his quarrel with King Richard whilst in Palestine, and suddenly he got his enemy within his reach. Escaping the Paynim foe, the Red Cross hero was wrecked in the ship which brought him to European shores, near Aquileia. This mishap necessitated his passing through the

Duke's dominions in order to reach England, to accomplish which he took the precaution to disguise himself as a pilgrim. Notwithstanding his forethought, he was discovered, and forthwith confined in prison. The place of immurement was the fortress of Dürnstein, surrounded by the Emmersdorf country. Poised on the crest of a well-nigh perpendicular rock, it stood one of the most formidable among the castles of the age. The Danube swept by, and lashed the base of the gigantic fabric. There was a tower which still remains—a monument of the skill and daring of mediaeval builders—wherein the English King was imprisoned.

Blondel, following his master from Palestine, had lost sight of him in the wreck, being himself driven into the lagunes of Venice; but, faithful singer, he no sooner reached *terra firma* than his thoughts turned to the whereabouts of his royal patron. Not finding any clue, he determined that he would travel the whole of Europe to find his beloved master, and it was in carrying out his resolve that Blondel heard, quite by accident, the rumour that his King was imprisoned. Suddenly he remembered the circumstance of his master's old disagreement with Duke Leopold, and starting off for Austria, after many searchings and more misgivings, he learnt of a most notable prisoner suffering confinement in the stern castle of Dürnstein.

Now did Blondel's heart beat for joy. He felt

sure he had all but found his royal patron. How could he reach him? Bribes or fair-dealing would only frustrate the end he had in view. At last he bethought him to approach a window in the tower, from which he hoped and suspected the imprisoned one might catch his voice. This was so. In the stillness of the night he preluded on his instrument, and began to sing a romanza composed by Richard himself in Palestine at a time when ardent love for the beautiful Marguerite, Countess of Hennegau, filled his whole heart. Blondel began :

'Fierce in me the fever burning,
Strength and confidence unmanned,
Eyes, though dark their sight is turning,
Yet discerning
Through the gloom Death's pallid hand
Grimly stretched across from out the spectral land ;
Then came my Love so bright and true,
And Death and fever quickly withdrew.'

Here the minstrel stopped ; as each verse of the song had a refrain, he was sure that, if the captive was really Richard, he would now betray himself in singing the refrain.

Blondel's supposition proved correct. A voice, hollow, yet well practised in the art of singing, answered from the prison :

'I know with full assurance
That Woman's gentle care
Brings comfort, hope, endurance,
In time of deep despair.'

‘When to arms the trumpet sounded,
 Swift I rushed amid the fray,
 Where the heaviest blows abounded,
 Till surrounded
 By the foe, I stood at bay ;
 Powerless sank my arm, black night obscured my day ;
 On Love I called, nor called in vain,
 And victor rested on the plain.’

The same voice replied :

‘I know with full assurance
 That Woman’s gentle care
 Brings comfort, hope, endurance,
 In time of deep despair.’

Blondel finished with the last verse of the song :

‘When the air is rent asunder
 By the furious battle-cry,
 When the lightning and the thunder
 Raise our wonder
 And alarm, resigned am I ;
 Never from my heart shall trust and courage fly ;
 Though danger still my steps pursue,
 Love always bears me safely through.’

The voice again answered :

‘I know with full assurance
 That Woman’s gentle care
 Brings comfort, hope, endurance,
 In time of deep despair.’

Great was Blondel’s joy, as now there was scarcely a doubt that it was his beloved Royal master who had answered him ; but to make quite sure, he improvised a fourth verse to the same melody :

‘Foul revenge and envy waken
'Gainst the Lion coward spite ;
Trapped, he is to prison taken,
All forsaken ;
Faith guides Blondel's search aright ;
Lionheart ! soon shines before thee,
Freedom's light !’

And at once the voice of the unseen captive replied likewise in improvisation :

‘Were lovely Margot now with me,
This dungeon would a heaven be !
For—I know with full assurance
That Woman's gentle care
Brings comfort, hope, endurance,
In time of deep despair.’

Then did Blondel feel certain that he had found his patron and King. He sped to England, and told his story to the barons and nobles. Without loss of time a treaty was entered into for Richard's ransom, and though the enormous sum of £300,000 was demanded, it was collected and cheerfully paid in order that England might once more become possessed of her valorous sovereign.

A lay, or song of complaint, is attributed to Richard I. during his imprisonment in the Tour Tenebreuse, or Black Tower. The following stanza shows its style and drift :

‘No wretched captive of his prison speaks,
Unless with pain and bitterness of soul ;
Yet consolation from the Muse he seeks,
Whose voice alone misfortune can control.

Where now is each ally, each baron, friend,
 Whose face I ne'er beheld without a smile?
 Will none, his Sov'reign to redeem, expend
 The smallest portion of his treasures vile?

As we all know, the King was set free, and came again to England. When he died, a troubadour, named alike Gaucelm and Anselm Faidit, who had followed in his train to Palestine, wrote a poem on the death of his benefactor. Here are the grateful bard's words and music :

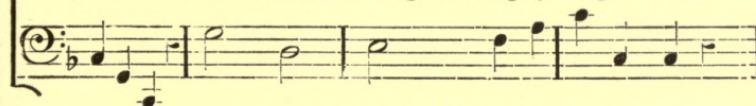
Now fate has filled the mea - sure of my woes, And

rent my heart with grief un - felt be - fore : No fu -ture blessings

wounds like these can close, Or mi - ti - gate the loss I now de-



plore. The valiant Richard, England's mighty king, The



fire and chief of all that's good and brave, Of tyrant



Death has felt the fa - tal sting: A thousand years his equal may not



bring, The world from meanness and con - tempt to



save, The world from mean - ness and con-tempt to save.



This song breathes the spirit of affection and loyalty that existed between minstrel and patron, even when as distantly distinguished as were this King and subject, in those palmy days ere minstrelsy gave way before the methods and principles of a theoretical and scientific art.

Another musical event in Richard I.'s reign was the discovery and release of the captured heiress of D'Evreaux, Earl of Salisbury, from her relations in Normandy, by a knight disguised as a harper, who carried her off in triumph, and presented her to the King. He gave her in marriage to his natural brother, William Longespée, who thus became Earl of Salisbury in his wife's right.

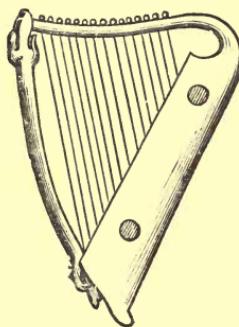
The story of King Richard and Blondel will prepare the reader for the many privileges extended to minstrels ; nor will he be surprised to find that eventually these favours became so numerous, far-reaching, and so abused, that legislative control had to be exercised over them.

One singular privilege concerned with minstrels and minstrelsy dates as far back as the reign of King John (1199-1216 A.D.), and was confirmed in

Privileges of the Minstrels. modern times as recently as the seventeenth year of George II.'s reign. It arose out of the Midsummer Fair at Chester, the institution of which is traced to the time of Edward the Confessor, when Leofric, Earl of Chester, among other grants in favour of the

Abbey of St. Werburg in that city, established a fair on the festival of the saint to whom it was dedicated, and ordained that the persons of vagabonds of every description, and even culprits, who should assemble there during that solemnity, should be safe, provided they were not guilty of any new offence.

This privilege happened to prove of singular advantage to Earl Randal, who in 1212 A.D., during the reign of King John, was unexpectedly besieged by the Welsh in Rhuddllan Castle, in Flintshire. The loose people at the fair were summoned together, through the aid of Robert de Lacy, Constable of Chester, who, with pipers and other minstrels, led them into the castle, and by their number and appearance, rather than by their prowess, so terrified the Welsh that they fled instantly. 'In memory of which notable exploit,' we are told, 'that famous meeting of such minstrels hath been duly continued to every midsummer fair; at which time the heir of Hugh de Dutton, accompanied with divers gentlemen, having a penon of his arms borne before him by one of the principal minstrels, who also weareth his surtout, first rideth up to the east gate of the city, and there causeth proclamation to



FIFTEEN-STRINGED HARP
OF THE TWELFTH CENTURY.

be made that all the musicians and minstrels within the County Palatine of Chester do approach and play before him. Presently, so attended, he rideth to St. John's Church, and having heard solemn service, proceedeth to the place for keeping of his court, where the steward, having called every minstrel, impanelleth a jury, and giveth his charge ; first to inquire of any treason against the King, or Prince (as Earl of Chester) ; secondly, whether any man of that profession hath exercised his instrument without licence from the lord of that court, or what misdemeanour he is guilty of ; and, thirdly, whether they have heard any language amongst their fellows, tending to the dishonour of their lord and patron, the heir of Dutton. Which privilege was anciently so granted by John de Lacy, Constable of Chester, son and heir to the above specified Roger, unto John de Dutton and his heirs, by a special charter, in these words, "*Magisterium omnium liccatorum et meretricum totius Cestreshire,*" and hath been thus exercised time out of mind.'

Among the many occupations of minstrels was an attendance at important marriages. In the year

**Employ-
ments
for
Minstrels.** 1290 A.D. Eleanor, Queen of Henry II., witnessed such felicitous events as the marriage of her two daughters, Joan and Margaret. Both ceremonies were conducted with much splendour, and minstrels from all parts flocked to Westminster. It is improbable that they took

any active musical part in the religious service, since the choral establishment of the Abbey would have been adequate for the occasion ; and it is more likely that the minstrels' services were required for the rejoicings and festivities that followed the ceremony.

From the records of these auspicious occasions, we read that several 'kings of the minstrels' were present. These were

Grey of England, Caupenny from Scotland, and Poveret, the minstrel of the Mareschal of Champagne, who, when not occupied on account of their superior merit in solo performances, planned and conducted the minstrelsy in chorus, and were responsible for the conduct of the music and the behaviour of those who performed it. That some such arrangement was necessary



HENRY II.



PERFORMER ON A CIRCULAR PSALTERY OF THE TWELFTH CENTURY.

becomes evident when we remember the large numbers in which the minstrels gathered together

upon special occasions. Thus, at the nuptials of Henry II.'s daughter Margaret there were over four hundred minstrels, English and others, engaged.*

The policy, with its consequences, of the lofty, intrepid, and inflexible prelate—Thomas à Becket—in this reign have cast some little light upon the musical features of the time. Thus, when in 1159



Noble. Churchman. Yeoman. Peasants. Soldiers.

ENGLISH COSTUMES, TIME OF HENRY II.

the future 'Archbishop and priest of God' went to Paris to negotiate the marriage between the eldest son of Henry II. and the daughter of Louis VII.,

* And such numbers might easily have been increased in the manner suggested by Du Cange. 'In the Middle Ages,' he writes, 'these men swarmed so about the houses and courts of the great and princes spent such large sums on them, as completely to their coffers.'

he entered the French towns 'preceded by two hundred and fifty boys on foot, in groups of six, ten or more together, singing English songs, according to the custom of their country.'

The foul murder episode takes us into the old Cathedral. It was dim twilight—the hour of vespers, which, indeed, had already commenced. At the sound of the psalmody of the choir, a voice exclaimed: 'To the church—it will afford protection.' The alarmed monks forced the Archbishop with pious violence through the cloisters into the church, where they, trembling with fear, concealed themselves under the altars and behind the pillars of the church. Becket met his murderers as he descended from the chapel of St. Benedict into the transepts. He passed them, and took up his station against a column between the altars of St. Mary and St. Bennett, where in a few moments he was cruelly butchered.

We learn, from an old record, that Henry III. (1216-1272 A.D.), in the thirty-sixth year of his reign, gave forty shillings and a pipe of wine to Richard, his harper, and also another pipe of wine to Beatrice, the harper's wife—'et in uno dolio empto et dato Beatrice uxori ejusdem Ricardi.'

Given not a little to the fine arts, Henry, though stupid and weak as a sovereign, and quite unequal to the troublous spirit of the times, yet favoured music, painting, and architecture. Some of our best Cathedral architecture dates from his

reign ;* illuminated Prayer-Books, missals, and the like, afforded engrossing labour for the cultured minds of his period. We find one Henry d'Avranches, probably a Norman Frenchman, dignified with the title of Master Henry the Versifier, an appellation which has been held to imply a character somewhat different from the Royal minstrel or joculator. In the years 1249 and 1251 A.D. are to be found orders on the Treasurer of the Royal Household to pay this 'Master Henry' one thousand shillings, probably a year's stipend. Thus music was befriended by this King.

The next Sovereign, Edward I., 'Longshanks' (1272-1307 A.D.), was more addicted to tiltings and tournaments than to the pleasure and profit which music afforded. He appears to have retained some patronage of the art, for we hear of his minstrel not following his avocation merely, but actually guarding,

* Among the principal churches in the Early English style of architecture built in this reign are : Wells Cathedral, built by Bishop Joceline, 1225-1229 A.D. ; Lucock Abbey, Wilts, built by Ela Longespée, Countess of Salisbury, and afterwards Abbess, 1232-1238 A.D. ; Southwell Minster choir, built by Archbishop Grey, 1232 A.D. ; Ely Cathedral Presbytery, built by Bishop Northwold, 1235-1252 A.D. ; Ashbourne Church, Derbyshire, 1235-1241 A.D. ; Netley Abbey, built by Bishop Peter de Roche, A.D. 1239 ; Nine Altars Chapel, Durham Cathedral, built by Bishop Poore, 1242-1290 A.D. ; Glasgow Cathedral choir, built by Bishop Burdington, 1242-1248 A.D. ; Chetwode Church, Bucks, an Austin priory, 1244 A.D. ; choir and transepts, Westminster Abbey, rebuilt by Henry III. at his own expense ; Crowland Abbey, built by Abbot Ralph de Marche, 1255-1281 A.D., and several others.

and avenging an injury to, the person of his master. A short time before Edward I. ascended the throne **Edward I.** he was accompanied by his harper to **saved by a** the Holy Land. Upon an occasion at **Minstrel.** Ptolemais, Edward had the misfortune to be wounded with a poisoned knife, whereupon his harper, 'Citharaedus suus,' who must have been in close attendance upon his Royal master, and is worthy of praise for his alertness, hearing the struggle, rushed into the Royal apartments, and, striking the would-be assassin on the head with a tripod or trestle, beat out his brains, thus adequately requiting the insult to the King.

It would be thought that such a signal service would not be forgotten by the Sovereign, and would have inclined him favourably towards musi-

Massacre of Welsh Bards. cians generally. This does not appear, according to some writers, to have been the case. The bards had not lost their primitive influence over the people in the time of Edward I., who, it is said, became so irritated at the continual insurrections and disturbances fomented by their songs, that he caused many of them to be hanged. This reputed massacre of Welsh bards, it



EDWARD I.

must be stated, is not generally believed. To Sharon Turner, who studied Anglo-Saxon history minutely, it 'seems rather a vindictive tradition of an irritated nation, than a historical fact. The destruction of the independent sovereignties of Wales abolished the patronage of the bards, and in the cessation of internal warfare and of external ravages they lost their favourite subjects and most familiar imagery. They declined because they were no longer encouraged.' This so-called massacre, then, may be taken as a fable, the best authority for which will hardly bear scrutiny.

The reader will be struck with such an array of minstrels as the 426 who gathered together when Edward I. created some young knights ; and it can easily be imagined that their musical performances would be of an extremely effective and beautiful kind, inasmuch as they were probably all picked harpers and songmen reputed for their skill in music. There is an interesting record relating to their accommodation and that of the guests on this occasion, to the effect that 'the Royal palace, although large, was nevertheless small for the crowd of comers,' wherefore the 'full Court' was held by King Edward simultaneously at Westminster and the New Temple. The topography of the time no doubt admitted of the whole stretch of land, from Westminster to the City, forming a part of the Royal demesne—intersected by another palace at the Savoy—the line of approach being the pleasant waterway of the Thames.

As to the music, the very nature of the minstrel's art would be almost a guarantee of success. There were no harsh instruments employed; drums, cornets, and tubas, if known, were eschewed for an accompaniment of a much more graceful and charming kind. The instrument *par excellence* was the human voice in solo and chorus. It had an accompaniment and support in the harp, singly or in bands, with strings plucked in wondrous fashion—the whole framing into a harmonious combination of the most ravishing music, which heightened itself at moments until the very bounds of ecstasy were reached. *Similia similibus curantur.* Then would the harpers change their key, and with one grand sweep of cunning string whirl back the heart and brain to soberer mood—fit prelude, as they well knew, to an impassioned outburst of chorus harp-music, wild in its flights, surpassing in its transporting delights, and so thrilling that King, Baron, and noble rose to their feet, fired with the enthusiasm that had grown within them. Such spontaneous outbursts of natural, unrestrained musical passions were not infrequent among the harpers when banded together, who seemed moved by a common sympathy to float their vast harmony upon the wind's wings, and preferably in the full chorus form described.

As if by right, and fully deserving enduring fame, the names of not a few of these harper-singers—musical minds who constituted so picturesque a feature in a particularly stern period in our country's

history—have come down to us. There were Northfolke and Carleton, Lambyn Clay, Fairfax—a name that appears again among fifteenth-century musicians—Merlin and Richard Wheatacre; then we meet with Richard de Haleford, Adam de Werintone, Adam de Grimmeshawe, Hanecocke de Blithe—musical celebrities with surnames weaved, after Norman fashion, from the localities in which they resided. Sometimes only the Christian name of the harpers is given in these old records, thus: Lawrence, Matthew, Richard, John and Geoffrey; while other peculiarities of their enumeration are such suffixes as Guillaume 'sans manière,' Reginald 'le menteur,' or 'Perle in the Eghe,' 'Makejoy,' etc. Occasionally an unmistakable distinction of locality is recorded—like John 'de Salopia,' Robert 'de Scardeburghe,' and Robert 'de Colecestria,' and sometimes the minstrel is identified by reference to his patron, as 'harper of the Bishop of Durham,' 'Abbot of Abyngdon,' 'Earl of Warrene,' etc.

Wages in those days constituted a not less important matter probably than they do now. Certainly the entries of disbursements and receipts tend to **Minstrels'** prove this. Original records, such as the **Payments** Wardrobe Books, showing the Royal Household expenses, preserved in the custody of the Queen's Remembrancer, furnish, happily, abundant information on this point. When, for instance, King Edward I. held his *cour plénière* at the Feast of Whitsuntide, 1306 A.D., to confer the

honour of knighthood upon his son, Prince Edward, and several young nobles, there were present six kings of the minstrels, viz., Le Roy de Champaigne, Le Roy Caupenny, Le Roy Boisescue, Le Roy Marchis, Le Roy Robert, and Le Roy Druet. The first five received each a sum equivalent in present-day money to £50, while Le Roy Druet was paid £30. The list of money states that five marks, or £3 6s. 8d. (the mark being 13s. 4d.), was the sum paid to each chief minstrel.

On the occasion of the marriage of Queen Eleanor's daughter Margaret, the bridegroom gave, very generously, the sum of £100 to be distributed amongst the 426 minstrels present. This pleasant task was willingly undertaken by Walter de Storton, and each musician received the substantial sum of £3 10s. 4d. for his services at the wedding festivities. Altogether some £200, or £3,000 of our money, was expended upon the music at this brilliant social function. One shilling in those days is computed to have been worth fifteen shillings at the present time. A simple calculation will show, therefore, that a liberal estimate was then put upon the musician and his art that would do infinite credit to many who find themselves in quest of 'a little music' nowadays, especially to that class of really well-to-do people who, wittingly or unwittingly, act towards the musician as if his only care was to air himself and his art, untroubled and unconcerned with such mundane matters as flour and firewood.

Another excellent method that appears to have obtained with patron and minstrel was one which, probably, set that fashion which is not altogether effaced yet awhile. Not content with paying the minstrel-labourer the worth of his hire, the appreciative patron went to the expense of obtaining some enduring token which he could bestow upon a favourite performer. We learn this from an entry that occurs in the accounts of the executors of Queen Eleanor (1291 A.D.). It is a record of a disbursement

of thirty-nine shillings for a cup, purchased for presentation to a distinguished performer among the King's minstrels.

Passing from Edward's reign to that of his son, Edward II. (1307-1327 A.D.), we find unusual attention and consideration being bestowed upon

the minstrel and his art. In the year 1309 A.D., at the feast of the installation of Ralph, Abbot of St. Augustine's, Canterbury, seventy shillings (or £52 10s.) was expended on the minstrels who accompanied their songs with the harp. That excellent method, indicated by the word 'grant,' or gift—the absence of which on a national scale has so impeded the legitimate advancement of modern



EDWARD II.

musical England—comes conspicuously before us. These grants occasionally took the sensible shape of real estate, and not improperly and without doubt not undeservedly, the native musician was often singled out for this favour. Thus, Le Roy Robert, who was the English King of the Minstrels, figures as the recipient of many money grants, while to 'Roy de North,' the King's minstrel, whose real name appears to have been William de Morlee—Morley is a name that afterwards becomes famous amongst Elizabethan composers — are conveyed several houses that once had belonged to John le Boteler, surnamed Roy Brunhaud.

Nor were those who had the welfare of the minstrels at heart unmindful of their exterior. These providers of music for indoors and outdoors were

**The
Minstrels'
Dress.** clothed as well as fed—wearing, indeed, a special and costly attire of velvet, satin, silk, and furs of ermine. Besides the large sums of money which were paid them by the nobles, the minstrels received gratuitously these expensive habiliments. Froissart (1337-1410), speaking in his 'Chronicles' of the condition and magnificence of the Count de Foix, states that on one Christmas Day at his Court there were seated at the table four Bishops, Viscounts, knights, and his own kinsmen. In the hall were many minstrels, 'as well those belonging to the Count as to the strangers who were present. This day the Count



MINSTRELS' PILLAR, ST. MARY'S CHURCH, BEVERLEY.*

(Photograph by Messrs. F. Frith and Co., Reigate.)

gave to the minstrels and heralds 500 francs among them ; he also clothed the minstrels of the Duke of Torraine with cloth of gold trimmed with ermine ; the dresses were valued at 200 francs.'

The Earl of Lancaster in Edward II.'s time used to expend much money on the liveries of his minstrels. The representations on a column and arcade in Beverley Minster indicate the style of the minstrels' dress. When walking or travelling in the open air they slung their instruments—which were light—over their shoulders, suspended by a silken tape or cord, and so protected the harp and crwth from unfavourable weather or undue gaze under the customary loose outer cloak or surtout. They had piked boots or shoes, which, on special occasions, were tied to the knees with chains of silver. That it was a characteristic costume consistent with the grace and beauty of the art of which they were the exponents is probable, while it is certain that, after the fashion of the costumes of the period, it was as picturesque as it was conspicuous.

Trokelowe,* the chronicler, gives us a curious passage relating to minstrels, which shows that women even were not denied the order :

' When Edward II. this year (1306) solemnized the Feast of Pentecost, and sat at table in the

* Trokelowe (John of) was a monk of Tynemouth, who died about 1343. He continued the *Chronicle of Rishanger*. His *Annals* extend from 1307 to 1323.

great Hall of Westminster, attended by the peers of the realm, a certain woman, dressed in the habit of a minstrel, riding on a great horse, trapped in the minstrel fashion, entered the hall, and going round the several tables, acting the part of a minstrel, at length mounted the steps to the Royal table, on which she deposited a letter. Having done this, she turned her horse, and, saluting all the company, she departed. When the letter was read, it was found to contain certain animadversions on the King's conduct, at which he was greatly offended. The door-keepers being called and threatened for admitting such a woman, readily replied that it never was the custom of the King's palace to deny admission to minstrels, especially on such high solemnities and feast days.'

That the dress of the minstrels was of a superior class is all but established by a reference to the subject in a poem treating of the period of Edward II., and cited by Stowe (1523-1603). Therein knights of the day are warned to adhere to their proper costume, lest they be mistaken for minstrels. If the clothes worn by each order of society would tend to such a misapprehension, they must have been similar in cut and texture, unless, indeed, the nobles, emulating the minstrels, discarded their own apparel, and adopted that in the style of the musicians.

Here is the allusion :

'Knytes schuld weare clothes
 I-schape in dewe manere,
 As his order wold aske,
 As well as schuld a frere*
 Now thei beth disgysed,
 So diverselych i-digit,†
 That no man may knowe
 A minstrel from a knygt
 Well ny
 So is mekenes falt adown
 And pryde aryse an hye.'

The minstrels were not music-makers only. They appear to have been artists to their finger-tips, and their language seemingly found vent and expression not in string and tone only, but even in stone. If minstrels were not the actual craftsmen, and only the donors, then there must have been the soul of music, and great veneration for the art in the hearts of our nameless and forgotten countrymen who sculptured such wondrous and almost incomparable work as the west front of Wells Cathedral (1230-1235 A.D.), wherein the workers introduced, in almost speaking stone, the angels chanting the *Gloria in Excelsis*.

In thirty-two quatrefoils are angels in descent, variously disposed, chanting *Gloria in Excelsis*. They hold in their hands mitres, crowns, and scrolls—emblems of temporal and eternal rewards to those who listen faithfully to their message of salvation.‡

* Friar.

† Bedight.

‡ Bishop Ralph de Salopia founded the College of Vicars Choral, or Singing Men, in the year 1329, and endowed the

Time has effaced the workmanship, but enough remains to speak the soul of the workers. Cromwell's forces greatly damaged the carvings.

Again, if an actual example of masonic musical work is demanded, that exquisite example in Beverley Minster already referred to well attests it.

Chappell, in his remarks on English minstrelsy, thus describes the Beverley Minster pillar: 'Five men are thereon represented, four in short coats, reaching to the knee, and one with an overcoat, all having chains round their necks and tolerably large purses. The building is assigned to the reign of Henry VI., when minstrelsy had greatly declined, and it cannot therefore be considered as representing minstrels in the height of their prosperity.'

They are probably only instrumental performers (with the exception, perhaps, of the luteplayer); but as one holds a pipe and a tabor, used only for rustic dances, another a crowd or treble viol,

singers with the manor of Wellesleigh and other estates. By his will he gave them 20 quarters of wheat, 20 quarters of barley, 20 quarters of oats, 10 oxen, 10 cows, and 100 sheep. He also gave the choristers (boys) 10 quarters of wheat, 2 oxen, 2 cows, and 20 sheep, besides which he built a house for the residence of themselves and their master on the west side of the cloisters. Founder's Day is still kept up. On November 8 every year, the priest-vicars, vicars-choral, and choristers repair to the vicar's chapel, and there hold a service in commemoration of Bishop Ralph de Salopia.

a third what appears to be a bass flute, and a fourth either a treble flute, or perhaps that kind of hautboy called a wayght, or wait, and there is no harper among them, I do not suppose any to have been of that class called minstrels of honour, who rode on horseback, with their servants to attend them, and who could enter freely into a king's palace. Such distinctions among minstrels are frequently drawn in the old romances. For instance, in the romance of *Launfel* we are told, "They had menstralles of moche honours," and also that they had "Fydelers, sytolyrs (citolers), and trompoteres." It is not, however, surprising that they should be rich enough to build a column of a minster, considering the excessive devotion to, and encouragement of, music which characterized the English in that and the two following centuries.'

But a still more important example of stone carving bearing upon native music is to be seen in St. Mary's Church, Beverley. This is where the best minstrels' pillar stands, though all authorities that have come under my notice have either noticed only the Beverley Minster pillar, or mixed up the two.

The pillar in St. Mary's Church is the eastern-most pillar of the nave on the north side. Its history is somewhat as follows :

'In 1520 the central towers of the church fell, and destroyed a great part of the nave, especially the

north aisle. The restoration of this was effected by various voluntary offerings. All the corbels of the pillars which now support the nave bear inscriptions recording the names of those who gave to the re-building. Thus on the two westernmost pillars we read, "Klay and his wife made these two pillars and a half." On the fourth and fifth pillars, "These two pillars made good wives." On the sixth—"the minstrels' pillar"—"This pillar made the minstrels." Just below the capital, on a series of small brackets on the shaft of the pillar, are sculptured and still dimly-coloured figures of five minstrels. And it is supposed that they represent members of a certain guild or fraternity of minstrels or gleemen which flourished in Beverley.'

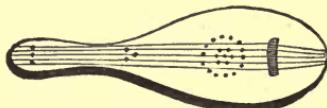
The inscription, in the writing of the period, seems to signify that the column was made by the minstrels, just as a poesy more distinctly expressed on a modern bell might run, 'Taylor of Loughborough made me.'

Another ancient and curious, though barbarous privilege in favour of English minstrels, which should be mentioned, was granted by John of Gaunt, Duke

^A of Lancaster, from his Castle of Tutbury in **Tutbury** the year 1381 A.D. The occasion was **Custom**.

the inauguration of the first English King of the Minstrels. 'During the time of which ancient Earls and Dukes of Lancaster, who were ever of the blood Royal, great men in their time, and had their

abode, and kept a liberal hospitality here at their house of Tutbury, there could not but be a great concourse of people from all parts hither ; for whose diversion all sorts of musicians were permitted likewise to come to pay their services ; amongst whom, being numerous, some quarrels and disorders now and then arising, it was found necessary, after a while, they should be brought under rules, divers laws being made for the better regulating of them, and a governor appointed them by the name of a *King*, who had several officers under him, to see the execution of those laws, full power being granted them to apprehend and correct any such minstrels appertaining to the said Honour, as should refuse to do their services in due manner, and to constrain them to do them ; as appears by the charter granted to the said King of the Minstrels by John of Gaunt, King of Castile and Leon, and Duke of Lancaster, bearing date the 22nd of August in the fourth year of the reign of King Richard the Second, entitled the "*Carta le Roy de Minstralæ*"; which being written in old French I have translated, and annexed it to this discourse, for the more universal notoriety of the thing, and for satisfaction how the power of the King of the Minstrels and his officers is founded, which take as follows :



THIRTEENTH-CENTURY LUTE.

““ John, by the Grace of God, King of Castile and Leon, Duke of Lancaster, to all them who shall see, or hear these our letters, greeting—Know ye, we have ordained, constituted, and assigned **John of Gaunt's Charter.** to our well-beloved the King of the Minstrels, in our Honour of Tutbury, who is, or for the time shall be, to apprehend and correct all the minstrels in our said honour and franchise, that refuse to do the services and minstrelsy, as appertain to them to do from ancient times, at Tutbury aforesaid, yearly, on the days of the Assumption of our Lady, giving and granting to the said King of the Minstrels for the time being full power and commandment to make them reasonably to justify and to restrain them to do their services and minstrelsy in manner as belongeth to them, and as it hath been there, and of ancient times accustomed. In witness of which thing we have caused these our letters to be made patent. Given under our privy seal, at our Castle of Tutbury, the 22nd day of August, in the fourth year of the reign of the most sweet King Richard the Second.”

‘Upon this, in process of time, the defaulters being many, and the amercements by the officers perhaps not sometimes over-reasonable, concerning which and other matters controversies frequently arising, it was at last found necessary that a Court should be erected to hear plaints, and determine controversies between party and party, before the steward of the

Honour, which is held there to this day, on the morrow after the Assumption, being the 16th day of August; on which day, they now also do all the services mentioned in the above said grant, and have the bull, due to them anciently from the Prior of Tutbury, now from the Earl of Devon; whereas they had it formerly in the Assumption of our Lady, as appears by an "Inspeimus" of King Henry the Sixth, relating to the customs of Tutbury; where amongst others, this of the bull is mentioned in these words: "That there is a certain custom belonging to the Honour of Tutbury that the minstrels, who come to Matins there on the Feast of the Assumption of the Blessed Virgin, shall have a bull given them by the Prior of Tutbury, if they can take him on this side of the river Dove, which is next Tutbury; or else the Prior shall give them 40d., for the enjoyment of which custom they shall give to the lord, at the said feast, 20d."

‘Thus, I say, the services of the minstrels were performed, and privileges of the bull enjoyed anciently on the Feast of the Assumption; but now they are done and had in the manner following: On the Court day, or morrow of the Assumption, being the 16th of August, what time all the minstrels within the Honour come first to the bailiff's house of the Manor of Tutbury (who is now the Earl of Devonshire), where the steward for the Court to be holden for the King, as Duke of Lancaster (who is

now the Duke of Ormond), or his deputy, meeting them, they all go from thence to the parish church of Tutbury, two and two together, music playing before them, the King of the Minstrels for the year past walking between the steward and the bailiff, or their deputies, the four stewards, or under officers of the said King of the Minstrels, each with a white wand in their hands, immediately following them, and then the rest of the company in order. Being come to the church, the Vicar reads them divine service, choosing Psalms and Lessons suitable to the occasion. The Psalms when I was there, (1680) being the 98th, 149th and 150th; the first lesson *Chronicles ii. 5*, and the second, the fifth chapter of the Epistle to the Ephesians to the 22nd verse. For which services, every minstrel offered one penny, as a due always paid to the Vicar of the Church of Tutbury upon this solemnity.

‘ Service being ended, they proceed in like manner from the Church to the Castle-hall or Court, where the steward, or his deputy, taketh his place, assisted by the bailiff, or his deputy, the King of the Minstrels sitting between them; who is to oversee that every minstrel, dwelling within the Honour and making default, shall be presented and amerced; which that he may the better do, an *O! Yes!* is then made by one of the officers, being a minstrel, three times, giving notice by direction from the steward to all manner of minstrels, dwelling within

the Honour of Tutbury, viz., within the counties of Stafford, Derby, Nottingham, Leicester and Warwick, owing suit and service to his Majesty's Court of Music here holden as this day, that every man draw near and give his attendance, upon pain and peril that may otherwise ensue; and that if any man shall be essoigned of suit, or plea, he or they should come in, and they should be heard. Then all the musicians, being called over by a court-roll, two juries are impanelled, out of twenty-four of the sufficientest of them, twelve for Staffordshire, and twelve for the other counties; whose names being delivered in Court to the steward, and called over, and appearing to be full juries, the foreman of each is sworn, and then the residue, as is usual in other courts, upon the Holy Evangelists.

'Then to move them the better to mind their duties to the King, and their own good, the steward proceeds to give them their charge; first commanding to their consideration the original of all music, both wind and string music, the antiquity and excellency of both, setting forth the force of it upon the affections by divers examples. How the use of



A MINSTREL.

(From the Arundel MSS.)

it has always been allowed (as is plain from Holy Writ) in praising and glorifying God ; and the skill in it always esteemed so considerable, that it is still accounted in the schools one of the liberal arts, and allowed in all Godly Christian Commonwealths ; where, by the way, he commonly takes notice of the statute, which reckons some musicians among rogues and vagabonds, giving them to understand that such societies as theirs, thus legally founded and governed by laws, are by no means intended by that statute ; for which reason, the minstrels belonging to the Manor of Dutton, in the County Palatine of Cheshire, are expressly excepted in that Act. Exhorting them upon this account to preserve their reputation, to be very careful to make choice of such men to be officers amongst them as fear God, are of good life and conversation, and have knowledge and skill in the practice of their art. Which charge being ended, the jurors proceed to the election of the said officers, the King having to be chosen out of the four stewards of the preceding year, and one year out of Staffordshire, and two out of Derbyshire ; three being chosen by the jurors, and the fourth by him that keeps the Court, and the deputy steward, or clerk.

‘ The jurors departing the Court for this purpose, leave the stewards with their associates still in their places, who in the meantime make themselves merry with a banquet, and a noise of musicians playing to

them, the old King still sitting between the steward and the bailiff as before ; but returning again, after a competent time, they present first their chiefest officer by the name of their King ; then the old King, arising from his place, delivereth him a little white wand in token of his sovereignty, and then, taking a cup filled with wine, drinketh to him, wishing him all joy and prosperity in his office. In the like manner do the old stewards to the new ; and then the old King riseth, and the new taketh his place ; and so do the new stewards of the old, who have full power and authority, by virtue of the King's steward's warrant, directed from the said Court, to levy and distrain in any city, town corporate, or in any place within the King's dominions, all such fines and amercements as are inflicted by the said juries that day upon any minstrel, for his or their offences committed in the breach of any of their ancient orders, made for the good rule and government of the said society. For which said fines and amercements so distrained, or otherwise peaceably collected, the said stewards are accountable at every audit ; one moiety of them going to the King's Majesty, and the other the said stewards have for their own use.

‘ The election, etc., being thus concluded, the Court riseth, and all persons then repair to another fair room within the castle, where a plentiful dinner is provided for them ; which being ended, the minstrels went anciently to the Abbey-gate, now to

a little barn by the town-side, in acceptance of the bull to be turned forth to them, which was formerly done (according to the custom above mentioned) by the Prior of Tutbury, now by the Earl of Devonshire ; which bull, as soon as his horns are cut off, his ears cropt, his tail cut by the stumple, all his body smeared over with soap, and his nose blown full of beaten pepper ; in short, being made as mad as it is possible for him to be, is let loose. After solemn proclamation made by the steward, that all manner of persons give way to the bull, none being to come near him by forty feet, any way to hinder the minstrels, but to attend his or their own safeties, every one at his own peril. He is then forthwith turned out to them, anciently by the Prior, now by the Lord Devonshire, or his deputy, to be taken by them and none others, within the County of Stafford, between the time of his being turned out to them, and the setting of the sun the same day ; which if they cannot do, but the bull escapes from them untaken, and gets over the river into Derbyshire, he remains still my Lord Devonshire's bull ; but if the said minstrels can take him, and hold him so long as to cut off but some small matter of his hair, and bring the same to the Mercat Cross, in token they have taken him, the said bull is then brought to the bailiff's house in Tutbury, and there collared and roped, and so brought to the bull-ring in the High Street, and there baited with dogs. The first course

being allotted for the King, the second for the honour of the town, and the third for the King of the Minstrels ; which, after it is done, the said minstrels are to have him for their own, and may sell, or kill, and divide him amongst them, according as they shall think good.

‘ And thus this rustic sport, which they call the bull-running, should be annually performed by the minstrels only ; but, now-a-days, they are assisted by the promiscuous multitude, that flock hither in great numbers, and are much pleased with it, though sometimes, through the emulation in point of manhood that has been long cherished between the Staffordshire and Derbyshire men, perhaps as much mischief may have been done in the trial between them as in the *Jeu de Taureau*, or Bull-fighting, practised at Valentia, Madrid, and other places in Spain ; whence, perhaps, this custom of bull-running might be derived, and set up here by John of Gaunt, who was King of Castile and Leon, and Lord of the Honour of Tutbury.’*

But minstrelsy in England, like most other things, had its fluctuating periods. For long it was held in the highest possible esteem, and was, indeed, favoured

**Decline
of
Minstrelsy.** by high and low alike. At one time there seemed to be no prospect of its ever waning. It was at once the schoolmaster and newspaper of the people, for most of the learn-

* Plott, ‘History of Staffordshire,’ cap. x., sect. 69.

ing that was acquired outside the Church came from the minstrel narrator, while he was also the mouth-piece of all matters and occurrences in the outside world. Then he carried messages from land to land, from master to mistress, from swain to lover—messages not concealed and circumscribed by the remorseless machinery of a Government Post-Office, but intelligence conveyed by word of mouth, and often in instrumentally-accompanied song ; messages varied, embellished, and expanded according to the issue and sympathies which they were intended to prompt. Thus was the minstrel a responsible public servant, with the affairs of the King and the peasant in his hands, and able, if so minded, by a word or inflexion to defeat or to gain any end desired.

Little wonder that he was feasted and fed, and escorted to a high place at the banquet ; and none less surprising is it that his trained eyes, to the discomfort of some far-off lover, caught betimes the nervous maiden's with mutual consent long ere the rightful lover's tale had passed the messenger's fervid lips.

Music from remote antiquity has proved a sure aid in capturing many hearts, and to sing or to harp has ever been a necessary requisite in the character of a perfect prince or a complete hero. During the early periods of music in every country, the wonder and affections of the people have been

gained by surprise at its charms. It was so in England with the minstrels ; but as in the course of generations these became numerous, and the art and accomplishment less surprising, they began to be lightly regarded and appreciated, and to lose favour. From this and other causes, the minstrel slowly declined in public and private estimation, and from being seated at the tables of kings, and helped to the first 'cut,' they were eventually reduced to the most abject state, and ranked among rogues and vagabonds. Quite an analogy with the ancient Greeks. Their first musicians, it will be remembered, were gods ; the second, heroes ; the third, bards ; the fourth, beggars !

Perhaps the chief contributory cause of the fall and ultimate banishment of the minstrel orders socially and morally arose from among themselves more than from elsewhere, or from any such cause as a new education, or an outburst of controlled musical method and fashion. The downfall might have been delayed for many years save for the **Causes of Decline.** pernicious element that gathered round minstrels and minstrelsy by reason of their very attractiveness. 'Familiarity breeds contempt,' and the success attending the profession of the minstrels, and the adulation and favours showered upon them by men and women alike in every rank of society, overcame the minstrels. They were killed with kindness, choked with praise. They

became pampered and spoiled children of luxury, who, little by little, took liberties with, and stole upon the kindness and indulgence of their patrons and patronesses until, gradually losing all sense of chivalry, refinement, and delicacy of sentiment they eventually passed into a condition characterized by licentious irregularity and vices of the worst kind.

What had occurred in the kingdom of Charlemagne happened in England. There the *trouvères* had passed from love-ditties to songs of a licentious, satirical and libellous character, which came to be so gross that proclamations were issued forbidding them to be sung, especially within the precincts of the churches. In great disgrace the English minstrels were deservedly allowed to remain. Hence the obloquy which for so many years afterwards attended the following of music as a profession in this country, and which reputation only the persistent example of musicians of the latter half of the nineteenth century has permanently removed.

The first serious check which the minstrel orders received was in the reign of Edward II. In the year 1315 A.D. it was deemed necessary to issue a

Legislative Minstrel Control. royal warrant for the better regulation of minstrels. Their numbers had increased

so greatly, and their demands had become so alarming, added to which dissolute and dangerous people had assumed the minstrel character, that the following order was promulgated :

‘Edward by the grace of God etc. to sheriffes etc., greeting. Forasmuch as many idle persons, under colour of minstrelsy, and going in messages and other faigned business, have been and yet be received in other men’s houses to meate and drynke, and be not therewith contented yf they be not largely consydered wyth gyttes of the lordes of the houses etc. We wylling to restrayne suche outrageous enterprises and idlenes &c. have ordeyned that to the houses of prelates, earles, and barons none resort to meate and drynke, unlesse he be a Mynstrel, and of these mynstrels that there be none except it be three or four Mynstrels of Honour at the most in one day, unlesse he be desired of the lorde of the house. And to the houses of meaner men that none come unlesse he be desired; and that such as shall come so, holde themselves contented with meate and drynke, and with such curtesie as the maister of the house wyl shewe unto them of his owne good wyl, without their askyng of any thyng. And yf any one do against this ordinance, at the firste tyme he to lose his Minstrelsie, and at the seconde tyme to forswear his craft, and never to be receaved for a Minstrel in any house. Geven at Langley the 6th day of August in the 9th year of our raigne.’* A very salutary order indeed !

When we come to the reign of Queen Elizabeth (1558-1603 A.D.), we shall find that among the other

* Leland Coll. (Hearne).

wise acts of this Queen one was intended to purge the minstrel order of some of the opprobrium which it had no doubt deservedly gained. This was the ordering of a commission, consisting of certain knights and esquires of the Principality, authorizing them, by open proclamation, to summon all persons intending to live 'by name or colour of minstrels, rhythmers or bards.' There was also a provision whereby such as should be found worthy to exercise the profession of music could be licensed. Such a step must have proved very beneficial, as it would have had the effect of ridding the ranks of incompetent performers and mere mountebanks.

Needless to say, however, that a class which had grown into public favour, and had won the hearts of the people so much as had the minstrels, would not be easily controlled ; also, whether they were good or bad, musically and morally, they were almost the sole amusers and entertainers of the people. Naturally they would die hard, whatever restrictions governed them, and this really proved to be the case.

The new rules and regulations for minstrels had for awhile the desired effect, so much so that the musicians and their art rose again in the estimation of the wealthy. We find them taking once more an active part in public and private social functions. Thus, on the Sunday before Candlemas, 1377 A.D., the friends of the young Prince Richard, son of the

Black Prince, arranged a mummery exhibition for his entertainment. A large gathering of minstrels was requisitioned. 'In the night,' relates the scribe, 'one hundred and thirty citizens, disguised and well horsed, in a mummery, with sound of trumpets, sackbuts, cornets, shalms, and other minstrels, and innumerable torchlights of waxe, rode from Newgate through Cheape, over the Bridge through Southwark, and so to Kennington besides Lambeth, where the young Prince remained with his mother, and the Duke of Lancaster, his uncle, the Earles of Cambridge, Hertford, Warwicke, and Suffolke, with divers other lords.*

Thus did the minstrels pursue their craft for several further generations. They were, indeed, on the decline, but they disappeared very gradually, and even at our own day they can hardly be said to have quite died out. In remote country places remnants of their orders survive in the person of the itinerant musician who travels from village to village, entertaining the villagers with instrument and song, fiddling for the dance in the manor barn at weddings and such-like festivities, and providing generally the only music the inhabitants either hear, or hire, from the outside world. What really wrought the greatest change in the minstrel and his art, however, was the advent of scientific music, *i.e.*, a systematized art. From the time that this set in, and the fourteenth

* Stowe, 'Survey of London.'

century composers and theorists began their work, minstrelsy was doomed, linger as it might and did.

That they died hard can easily be imagined. There was much about the minstrel and his art that won noble and lowly born alike ; and with all their faults and failings the minstrels had long rendered services not easily to be forgotten. Otherwise, how could they have reached that pinnacle of estimation in which they were so long regarded ?

We read in the household book of the Earls of Northumberland of the regulations for the minstrels ; and Bishop Percy, one of that family, in his 'Hermit of Warkworth,' says :

‘The minstrels of thy noble house,
All clad in robes of blue,
With silver crescents on their arms,
Attend in order due.’

Beyond a few further references in the course of our story, we must here bid adieu to the minstrel and his wondrous and captivating art, not forgetting how great a blank such narratory musical material filled for many years when the people had little else than their rustic music, with the Mass and Service tones chanted by the priests and monks. We must not look unkindly upon either minstrels or their art, but for which many a cherished story might have perished untold, and not a few of the threads of early English history would have proved seriously wanting. They kept the national chronology in

stormy times, when written records were few and far between. The deeds of soldier, bard, and sea-warrior were preserved in what such singers sang. These minstrels moulded the stories of the epochs—narratives of terrible onslaughts and victorious repulses—into acquisitive verse, and blended with it characteristic music such as gave life and colour to all that they told. Needless to say that such accompaniments breathed the true national spirit! The English people were made, and their music untainted, so that the soul-stirring melodies which helped the stories' current, the harmony that was swept by many a soft wind, was the true English music—notable for its freshness and vigour, and that peculiar ring of distinctiveness which can still be traced, and which indisputably gives its home and origin to no other country but Old England.

PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES.

‘Anecdotes of Music’	-	-	-	-	-	Burgh.
‘Antiquities of Chester’	-	-	-	-	-	Leycester.
‘Baronage’	-	-	-	-	-	Dugdale.
‘History of Staffordshire’	-	-	-	-	-	Plott.
‘Relicks of the Welsh Bards’	-	-	-	-	-	Jones.
‘Essay on National Song’	-	-	-	-	-	Ritson.
‘Order of the Garter’	-	-	-	-	-	Anstis.
‘Popular Music of the Olden Time’	-	-	-	-	-	Chappell.
‘Chronicles of England, France, and Spain’	-	-	-	-	-	Froissart.
‘Survey of London’	-	-	-	-	-	Stowe.
‘History of Music’	-	-	-	-	-	Burney.
<i>The Monthly Musical Record.</i>						
‘Recueil de l’Origine de la Langue et Poésie Française’						

CHAPTER VIII.

FIRST POLYPHONY, OR PART-WRITING: MUSICAL GRAMMAR AND AUTHORSHIP.

The Advent of Native Musical Authorship—Its Effect on the Art—Scientific *versus* Natural Music—England's Pre-eminence in Legitimate Music—The National Musical Change—Harmony Evolved—A Polyphonous Art—Folk-Music—Its Origin, Growth, and Early Character—Examples of Folk-songs—‘*Sumer is icumen in*’—Tenth Century Augustine Hymn-Music—Odington, Monk of Evesham—Corpus Christi College MSS.—Sir Frederick A. Gore Ouseley and Dr. Burney on Odington—Tunsted—John de Muris—Muris on the Singing of his Day—John Torksey, Master of Music—Robert Handlo—Burney on Handlo—Thomas Walsingham—Lionel Power—Specimen of his Teachings—Chilstion—Theinred—Early Time and Measure Principles—Prolation—Modus—Tempus—Perfect and Imperfect Measures—Instruments of the Period—Bishop Grosseteste and his Chamber Harper—MS. Representations of Instruments—The Organ—Early Details, Repairs, Bequests, etc., of Organs—The Variety and Number of Instruments.

WITH the coming of the Plantagenets we approach a period in the national musical life which provides evidence that when Music, ‘heavenly maid, was young,’ England played the chief part towards making it what it now is, the greatest, if youngest,

of the arts. Men large in mind, and with trained reasoning powers, rose up to grapple with perhaps the most difficult of the many aspects of music. They were not only performers, vocal or instrumental, of merit or otherwise, nor did they elect to fulfil merely the useful function of becoming historians of the art and its workers: they did immeasurably more. They devoted their talents and learning to fathoming the real nature of music, tracing its mathematical bases and scientific conditions, until in time a perfectly reasonable art was built up for all nations and all ages. Such a profound study, with the unravelling of the many abstruse points which it involved, could alone suffice to make Music a universal language — a medium not less powerful or effective, and eminently more beautiful than even Literature itself — for expressing every shade of emotion which the human mind realizes or can appreciate. Obviously it was a great work, and as a result of much patience, perseverance, and genius, music was lifted out of obscurity into the clear light of reason and order. From the art of the improvisatores it became the study of scientists and calculating theorists. Englishmen had all to do with this mighty evolution, and many are the writers, and numerous the MSS., which can be arrayed before the student to prove that, in furthering the earliest stages of music, our country took such a share as to justify its claim to a supre-

Polyphony,
or Part-
writing.

macy over all other countries as far back in the history of the art as the twelfth century.

This application of theory and method to music made but slow progress, especially in its early stages, when it stood a strange and new thing, by the side of the improvised art of the minstrels, which, with all its grace and fervour, had held for generations past a strong hold on the ears and hearts of the people. We have seen something of the rise, progress, and decline of minstrelsy ; and fortunate indeed was it that while the minstrels' art was spreading and influencing the national taste a new form of regulated and comprehensible musical art, to supplant it, should be gradually emerging from the hearts and minds of men who were to prove themselves the first of England's disputative musicians and theorists.

The new style of regulated music grew for a long time side by side with minstrelsy, and when at length it entered men's minds that the study of music, as a science, afforded a profitable and engaging pursuit for even the most learned, there proved no lack of gifted and diligent inquirers into sound values and mathematical ratios, such as the science of music involves. Now began to grow in earnest that great art-phase of our social national life, covered by the comprehensive term—Musical England.

At last, therefore, we are on solid ground. There exists no more need for doubt or speculation about

our subject, since the *terra firma* of English musical history is reached. The nature of this footing, and the date at which it was attained, place England indisputably two hundred years in advance of any musical nation existing at the time.* This enviable position cannot be reviewed save with feelings of the greatest pride and satisfaction, especially since by an unhappy sequence of fashionable taste and craze, or, if not that, of sheer neglect and contemptuous indifference on the part of those from whom better things might have been expected, the voice of musical Britain has been allowed, until the present Queen's reign, to drop out entirely from the musical councils of Europe. Happily, the country is now fast regaining its rightful place in this respect. When we consider the low estimate in which England, as a musical nation, has been popularly regarded on the Continent, it must afford every patriot mind the liveliest satisfaction to be able to point the scornful to a period when this country, as incontrovertible evidence proves, was leading the way in musical learning. Two or three precious pieces of testimony have survived to show that England played the major part in making the art of music that vast medium of thought and expression which it now is. One item of proof—‘Sumer is icumen in’—gives England, as we have said,

* If we accept the Cornish hymn to St. Augustine with its music, we are three hundred and fifty years ahead.

a precedence of something like two centuries in the creative department of music. This is no trifling possession !

The aim and end of all music is the expression and inciting of feeling, passion, emotion—whatever it may be called ; and although melody is eminently adapted to the utterance of sentiment and feeling, its great power as a medium is enhanced beyond measure immediately it is associated with the sister element — harmony. With melody and harmony combined—and especially according to prescribed rule and method—an illimitable sphere of musical possibility opened out. The natural outpourings in which the minstrels and others before them indulged, afforded the liveliest pleasure to all who heard them, because such improvisations were the outpourings of really gifted artist-minds ; that they partook of many desirable musical properties is also certain enough ; but, after all, the reach of such art was prescribed, and it perforce passed away with those who practised it. The remembrance of it alone remained. Directly music became a written art that could be expressed in understandable characters, then its position was wholly altered. With a melody legible and on a writing substance, another melody and another could be built upon it at the will and temperament of the composer, and thus penned, all would become permanent art-work. Such was exactly what took place in musical England after the best

period of the minstrels. Harmony discovered and reduced to a scientific study—peculiarly suited as it was and is to many voices—a scope was immediately afforded to musical expression such as the fondest dreams of the improvisatores and minstrels could hardly have realized.

To go to the actual source, harmony seems to have arisen in the first instance among the Northern tribes of Europe, and it was not for centuries after

First Adoption of Harmony. they had freely adopted it for secular purposes that it was admitted into the music of the Church. Some writers endeavour to attribute the introduction of harmony into music to the influence of Christianity. So far as England is concerned, such a fixture would be wrong indeed, unless we elect to forego the musical reputation of the country prior to, say, Augustine's time. It is in the nature of things that wherever there is melody there harmony is close by, and it (though not perhaps a written art) must have been in practice here long before the news and influence of the great Passion-drama on Calvary could have spread to these shores. That Christianity greatly aided the development of harmony, however, is beyond question. Music is, of all the arts, the one most capable of reaching the emotions. It will rise up out of the deepest depths of the soul ; it will sink into its most inward recesses. No wonder, therefore, that when the dark veil of Paganism lifted over Europe, and

the glorious light of Christianity was discerned in the darkness, that the precious revelation began to be reflected in, and to find expression through music. Thus it was that harmony, *i.e.*, polyphonic or several-voiced music, adapted for young men and maidens, old men and children, set out on its grand march.

Before taking leave of the unwritten English musical art, it behoves us to consider an aspect of the national music which must have largely tinctured

**Folk-
music.** and flavoured the creations of England's first legitimate composers. Folk-music is a phase of every country's art which cannot but have permeated all early written music, just as the 'ding-dong' or turn of a successful song nowadays induces countless imitations. The unique position that folk-songs and traditional melodies occupied at a period when Western Europe was without music-science; the great blank such must have filled before, and long after, the dawn of Christianity; the element that folk music constituted in the foundation and development of the various European schools of music; its value and aid as a faithful index of the minds, longings, and fancies of the people of the soil—all render it a valuable factor in the making-up of the national musical style and character. What colour and tinge this folk-music must have lent to the healthy minds of the first English expressionists! Wherever the folk-song has lived and flourished

amid its pure air of nature, it has emanated from the life of the people, and has grown out of the soil that they trod. Hebrews, Greeks, and Romans, all had these songs, and while the women lightened their domestic pursuits with their country's melodies, the men sung them as they tempered the war weapon and ploughed the furrow.

With the migration of the German races, when music as an art yet was not, the tedium of many a monotony must have been dallied away to a soft folk-theme, or an onslaught in battle intensified by some grand, soul-stirring glee which the warrior Teuton learned as he lived. His existence often was under sparse roof save the broad canopy of heaven, while his land-song glittered with rapine and aggression. Rarely with him was it attuned in peaceful vein, more often impelling its singers to axe and oar with a dash which made Roman enemies fear them as fierce and cunning foes, with the sea for a war-school and the storm for a friend.

It is strains such as these, strains which have sprung out of many of the worst feelings as well as of the many varied and nobler moods of which human nature is capable, that constitute Folk-music. Such emanations sprang direct from the heart, and were as psychologically true as music can be: the shepherd tending his flock, the soldier on the march, the fisherman mending his nets, the sower casting seed, the reaper joyous with his sickle—these chanted

and sang songs long before the age of scientific art, and all is reflected in a country's musical character.

The characteristic of the folk-song is the fidelity with which it reflects nature in its human and physical aspects. Unadorned by art, it speaks the

Nature of Folk-music. simple minds of the people, and, as we muse over its tones, we not only picture the gaily-attired peasantry who sang it,

but we seem to breathe the very air of the country to which it belongs. It tells of the existence and every-day life of workers, indoor and outdoor, whose character alone remains to us as we see it reflected in these faithful mirrors of times which every lover of his country cherishes.

British folk-music that has come down to us has all the mixture of influences which have been infused into us, and which have made us pre-eminent

British Folk-music. as a people. The soft and fascinating nature of the strains of ancient British bards, as well as the good-humoured heartiness and manly strength and simplicity of the Saxon, can easily be traced throughout our national songs. Even more strongly marked in this folk-music is the Celtic character, with its impetuous, sensitive, and ardent swellings of wild melancholy and deep pathos, a feature which no conquest could stamp out nor even reach, hid away, as it perforce was, in the Welsh fastness and Highland stronghold.

As an art factor, the folk-song cannot be over-

rated. Breath of the sod, these natural outpourings, with their glow of truth and warmth, gave life to many kindred melodies for generation and generation. The early contrapuntists used the most popular folk-melodies as themes for their Masses and motets. That more of this British folk-music has not come down to us in notation is to be regretted. The possession of the roundelay, refrains, and dance tunes, many of which go back to the time of Henry VII., would throw a strong light on the habits and customs of our ancestors, and enable us to peep far back into the social life of ‘Merrie’ England.

BY CHANCE IT WAS.

16th Century.

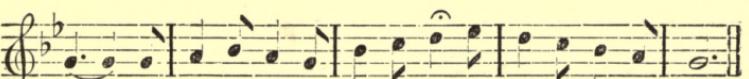
By chance it was I met my love, It did me much sur-



prise, Down by a sha-dy myr-tle grove, Just as the sun did



rise; The birds they sang right gloriously, And pleasant was the

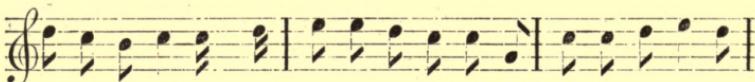


air, And there was none save she and I, A-mong the flowers fair.

FATHOM THE BOWL.

Ancient Welsh Harp Tune.

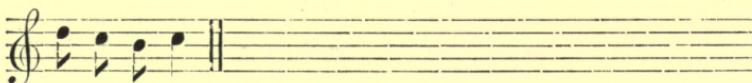
Come all you old minstrels wherever you be ! With comrades united in



sweet har-mo-ny, While the clear cry-stal fountain England shall roll, Give
through

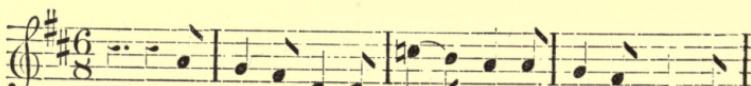


me the punch ladle, I'll fathom the bowl ; Give me the punch ladle, I'll

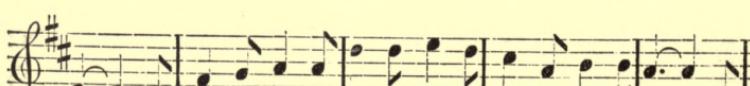


fathom the bowl.

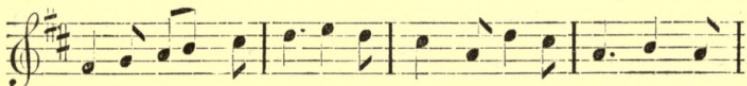
THE PAINFUL (FAITHFUL) PLOUGH.

Traditional.

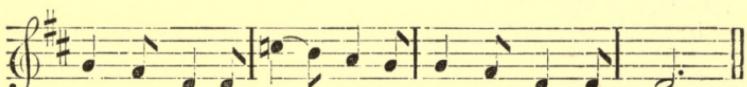
Come all you jolly ploughmen, of courage stout and



bold, That labour all the winter in the stormy winds and cold : To



clothe your fields with plenty, your farm-yards to re-new, For to



crown them with con - tent - ment, behold the pain - ful plough.

These were the songs which found vent at the Whitsun-ales, May-games, Sheep-shearings, Harvest-homes, Christmas Feasts, Wakes and Weddings.

'This traditional music,' writes an authority upon West Country music, 'lies in superimposed beds. Among the yeoman and farmer class, a few, chiefly hunting songs, remain. . . . They know nothing of those in the social bed below, which is the most auriferous; and the old song-men who sing for their 'entertainment' in taverns do not know the songs sung at the firesides of the yeomen. . . . Our folk-music is a veritable moraine of rolled and ground fragments from musical strata far away. It contains melodies of all centuries down to the present, all thrown together into one confused heap.'*

The most remarkable example of early part music, if we except a hymn to St. Augustine, is the composition known as 'Sumer is icumen in,' probably the greatest musical curiosity extant. It is the oldest piece of polyphonic and canonical composi-

* 'Songs and Ballads of the West' (Baring-Gould and Sheppard).

tion known to be in existence, and is reputed to be also the oldest song with musical notes attached to it. It is in the handwriting of the 'Sumer is icumen in.' thirteenth century. The words form an old Northumbrian Round, and are in praise of the cuckoo, a favourite subject in every age, with both poets and musicians.

Wanley, an accomplished antiquary and musician, discovered the composition in 1709, and both Burney and Hawkins referred to and produced it in their musical histories, published later (1776). These writers attributed this musical curiosity to about the middle of the fifteenth century, but subsequent researches have proved that both Dr. Burney and Sir John Hawkins were in error, and that the MS. is beyond all doubt two hundred years older, *i.e.*, of the latter part of the reign of Henry III. Sir Frederick Madden declared it to belong to the thirteenth century, and fixed its date *circa* 1250 A.D. The late Mr. William Chappell,* the accomplished antiquary and author of 'Popular Music of the Olden Time,' took a great interest in this remarkable composition, and now we know conclusively its real antiquity.

It was copied by a monk of Reading, named John Fornsete, a man of light and learning, whose name will ever adorn English musical annals. The latest date of his work is the year 1228, when the original

* Who reproduced the MS. with black stave-lines instead of red, as in the original.

could not have been very long composed. This practically fixes the date of the copy. The author of the music—and that talented countryman was probably one of a small knot of gifted musical workers who constituted the First English School—gives the following curious directions for the performance of his piece, which he calls ‘Rota’: ‘Hanc rotam cantare possunt quatuor socii. Paucioribus autem quam tribus aut saltem duobus non debet dici; præter eos qui dicunt pedem. Canitur autem sic. Tacentibus ceteris, unus inchoat cum his qui tenent pedem. Et cum venerit ad primam notam post crucem inchoat alius; et sic de ceteris. Singuli vero et repausent ad pausaciones scriptas, et non alibi, spatio unius longæ notæ.’ It is, therefore, a six-voiced canon, four in one, built upon two additional parts, forming a ‘Pes’ or ground bass, the only piece of music in six real parts known to exist before the fifteenth century. The words of the song in full are :

‘Sumer is icumen in,	Lhouth after calve cu ;
Lhudé sing Cuccu.	Bulluc sterteth,
Growtheth sed, and bloweth	Bucke verteth,
med,	Murie sing Cuccu,
And springth the wde nu.	Cuccu, Cuccu.
Sing Cuccu.	Wel singes thu Cuccu ;
Awe bleteth after lomb,	Ne swik thu nauer nu.’*

* Which means to say, Summer has come in, loud sings the cuckoo. The seed grows, and the mead blows—*i.e.*, is in flower—and the new wood springs. The ewe bleats after the lamb,

A transcription of this remarkable composition into the modern form of notation is given below, from which the reader will be able to judge of the sweet and pastoral nature of the music, and its adaptability to the words.

It will be observed that the composition is fairly free from errors of harmony, and that it is a strict

SUMER IS ICUMEN IN.

Su-mer is i - cu-men in, Lhu-de sing Cuc-eu.

Su-mer is i - cu-men

Sing Cuc - cu nu. Sing Cuc - cu.

Sing Cuc - cu

the cow lows after the calf; the bullock starts, the buck verts—or leaves the wood for the grass—merrily sings the cuckoo. Well singest thou, cuckoo; may'st thou never cease.

SUMER IS ICUMEN IN (*continued*).

Grow eth sed, and blow-eth med, And springth the w - de
in, Lhu-de sing Cuc - eu. Grow - eth sed, and
Su-mer is i - cu men in, Lhu - de sing Cuc -
Su - mer is i -
Sing Cuc - cu nu. Sing Cuc - nu. Sing Cuc -
Sing Cuc - cu. Sing Cuc -

canon—in fact, it is, save the Augustine Hymn, the earliest example of canon known. It supplies also the earliest specimen of a ground bass, or 'Pес.' In every way it is a priceless documentary proof of English musical invention.* Bearing in mind its

* The original of this MS. is in the British Museum, Harleian Collection, No. 978, and in the same valuable codex will be found other documentary evidence of the existence of this genuine First English School.

SUMER IS ICUMEN IN (*continued*).

nu. Sing Cuc - cu. Aw - e.
 blow-eth med, And springth the w - de nu. Sing
 - cu. Grow - eth sed, and bloweth med, And springth the
 - cumen in, Lhu - de sing Cuc - cu. Grow-eth
 - cu. Sing Cuc - cu nu. Sing
 - cu nu. Sing Cuc - cu. Sing

undoubted genuineness, it becomes a valuable piece of British musical evidence—quite enough to prove absolutely that, despite the persistent disregard of England as a musical nation by her Continental neighbours, this country can fearlessly lay claim to a precedence even in musical matters—to having, in fact, given the Western world its musical start in those far-off days when constructive music was in its first stages towards becoming the great art—the vast

SUMER IS ICUMEN IN (*continued*).

blet-eth af - ter lomb, Lhouth af - ter cal - ve cu;
 Cuc - cu. Aw - e blet - eth af - ter lomb, Lhouth
 w - de nu. Sing Cuc - cu.
 sed, and bloweth med, And springth the w - de nu.
 Cuc - cu. Sing Cuc - cu nu.
 Cuc - cu nu. Sing Cuc - cu.

vehicle of refined, as well as unrefined expression which it now is.

One curious characteristic marks this composition. Though in praise of the cuckoo, no attempt is made to imitate that bird's call, one of the simplest of reproduction, since it is but a descending third interval. The temptation to introduce this into the music would certainly be more than many modern musicians would be able to withstand.

SUMER IS ICUMEN IN (*continued*).

Wel sing-es thu Cuc - eu ; Ne swik thu na - ver nu.

Cuc - cu, Cuc - cu. Wel sing - es thu Cuc-cu.

Mu-rie sing Cuc-cu. Cuc - - cu.

Bul-luc stert-eth, Buck-e vert-eth, Mu - rie sing Cuc-cu.

Sing Cuc - cu nu. Sing Cuc - cu.

Sing Cuc - cu. Sing Cuc - cu.

On the original are engrossed in red letters the following instructions as to the singing of the 'Pes' in two lower parts :

1. 'Hoc repetit unus quoties opus est, faciens pausacionem in fine.'
2. 'Hoc dicit alias pausans in medio et non in fine, sed immediate repetens principium.'

The Latin words which are written under the old English ones suggest that the music was also used for religious purposes. This was not, probably, the

original intention. It is more likely that the tune was seized upon, as often was the case with secular airs, for adaptation to words for sacred purposes. The added words are :

'Perspice christicola	Filio non parcens	À supplicio
Quæ dignatio	Exposuit mortis exitio	Vitæ donat
Cœlicus agricola	Qui captivos	Et secum coronat
Pro vitis vitio	Semivivos	In cœli solio.'

Possibly parchment may have been dear and scarce in those days, since a similar utilization of space occurs in the 'Angelus ad Virginem' MS. belonging to the same period.*

We have referred in a former chapter to Guido and Franco, and their wonderful inventions of solmization, notation, time characters, etc. With these

* In connection with the much and rightly lauded 'Sumer is icumen in,' mention should here be made of a composition of even earlier date, which the Rev. Dr. Mee brought under the notice of the Musical Association in a paper read by him in May, 1888. This MS. is a hymn to St. Augustine (No. 572, Bodleian MSS., Oxford), set for two voices, and believed by experts to have been written in Cornwall as early as the tenth century. This composition antedates 'Sumer is icumen in' by about one hundred and fifty years, than which it is certainly not less striking as an example of polyphonic composition. To quote a writer in the *Musical Times*, † 'it tells the same tale, but in a far more striking way; for if both pieces are measured by the standards of their own time, it will be seen that the art shown in the eleventh century composition is far more extraordinary than that exhibited in the famous "Round."'

† August, 1895.

once provided, and such musical signs as the series of black notes called a 'semibreve,' 'breve,' 'long'

Walter Odington and 'large,' the material of written music was supplied. One of the earliest, probably the first writer upon the theory of music after Guido and Franco, was an Englishman—Walter Odington, or Odyngton, Monk of Evesham, Worcestershire. He was born, as we shall read later on, at the close of the twelfth century, in the reign of Henry III.—the date of one of his theoretical writings being ascribed to the year 1240 A.D.

An old authority, Dugdale, speaks of Odington among learned Englishmen of the Order of St. Benedict—*i.e.*, he was a Benedictine monk—'a man of a facetious wit, who, applying himself to literature, lest he should sink under the labour of the day, the watching at night, and continual observance of religious discipline used, at spare hours, to divert himself with the decent and commendable diversion of music, to render himself the more cheerful for other duties.' This apology, however, for the time he bestowed on music was quite unnecessary, since in Odington's day, and long after, no monk or Romish priest could hope to succeed in his profession if ignorant of music, a rule which it is a pity has not been enforced among Anglican clergy of later times. Then it was, too, that in secular life a knowledge of music was part of the compulsory education of a

gentleman, the art having second or third rank among the accomplishments.

The Odington MS. referred to is entitled '*De Speculatione Musicæ*', and is preserved in the Library of Corpus Christi (which Burney calls St. Benet's) College, Cambridge. It forms part of the Parker collection of MSS., the gift of Archbishop Parker to the College. It is thus briefly described in Nasmyth's catalogue :

CCCCX.

CODEX MEMBRANACEUS IN 4TO, SECULO XV. SCRIPTUS, IN QUO CONTINENTUR.

1. *Summus fratrī Walteri (Odingtoni) monachi Eveshamiæ musici de Speculatione Musicæ.*
2. *Imperfecta quædam de re musica Latine et Anglice.*

Its first page only has been injured by time, and some vacuities have been left by the scribe, which seem intended to have been filled up with red ink. The work is divided into six parts or books, full particulars of which are given by Burney.* The first part, '*De Inequalitate Numerorum et eorum Habitudine*', consists of ten chapters on the division of the scale and harmonical proportions ; the second part, with eighteen chapters, treats of ancient musical history, the Greek scales, harmonical proportions, etc. ; the third part is chiefly speculative, and touches such diverse matters as harmonics, proportions of

* 'History of Music,' vol. ii., p. 156 *et seq.*

organ-pipes, the casting of bells, and melody ; the fourth book concerns poetical feet and rhythms rather than music ; while the fifth part, of eighteen chapters, deals with the notes or characters used during his time, in chanting or plain song, as follows :

<i>Punctum</i>		<i>Apostropha</i>	
<i>Bispunctum</i>		<i>Bistropha</i>	
<i>Tripunktum</i>		<i>Tristropha</i>	
<i>Virga</i>		<i>Virga Biconpunctis</i>	
<i>Bivirgia</i>		<i>Virga Triconpunctis—condiatesaries, condapentis, etc.</i>	
<i>Trivergia</i>			

which characters express almost every species of interval by a single character, and groups of notes by a single term of art, added to which is a description of different kinds of ecclesiastical chants, and the rules to be observed in their composition. Finally, in the sixth and last part Odington treats of organum, or the composition of additional parts to melodies, etc. There can be no doubt that this is a most remarkable work for its time, one which, in Burney's opinion, would prove to be 'the most ample, satisfactory, and valuable which the Middle Ages can boast.'

Thus did one of our own countrymen take up the science and theory of music where it had been left by Franco, thereby giving Britain the indisputable honour of supplying the next writer upon **England and Mensural Music.** mensural music following Franco of Cologne. Such an achievement must not be lost sight of, especially in face of the contemptuous spirit in which it has been the fashion to regard the part played by this country in the development of the art.



LETTER NOTATION OF GUIDO D'AREZZO, WITH DECIPHERING.

The reader will not be surprised to learn that attempts have been made to deprecate, and even to deny to England, the pre-eminent position to which Odington's writings entitle her, some of the detractors going to the extent of doubting the authenticity of both the man and the manuscript.

Let us take Forkel,* the musical historian, and after him Kiesewetter, who roundly abuse Burney for his defence of Odington. Forkel declares of

* Vol. ii., p. 415, *et seq.*

Odington that 'we know scarcely anything more of him than the name, and the existence of a treatise said to be his, but nowhere published ;' while Kiese-wetter is bolder still : 'I challenge all English critics to confess that they know nothing more of the monk of Evesham, if they know him only through their Burney. The praises which the Doctor [Burney] lavishes upon him are by no means conclusive. He is dazzled by patriotism, and his object can only be to flatter his countrymen when he says of the treatise in question, *that it would have made all works from the time of Boethius to Franco, even had they been collectively lost, unnecessary to the world.*'*

This is strong, and a fair sample of the style of criticism that has been applied in the past regarding English musical work and influence.

A few fortunate features hinder such sweeping censure. The MS. itself can be handled and examined by trustworthy persons ; but perhaps the views of a later critic concerning the work and its author, an authority whose testimony is as valuable as that of any foreigner, will be the best answer to all objections whatever, and whenever raised. Sir Frederick A. Gore Ouseley, Mus. Doc., and late Professor of Music at Oxford University, in rightly making some interpolations to Naumann's 'History of Music,' wherein English musical history had, as

* 'History of Music,' p. 291.

usual, been neglected, says: 'Putting John Cotton on one side as doubtful, there still remain several well-known early theorists, concerning whose English nationality there can be no uncertainty at all. The earliest is Walter Odington, who was probably born somewhere between 1180 and 1190 A.D. He was a monk of Evesham, and was elected Archbishop of Canterbury in 1228 A.D., but the Pope disallowed the appointment. He is supposed to have lived till about the year 1250 A.D. In the library of Christ's College, Cambridge, there is the only known copy of his treatise, "*De Speculatione Musicae*," the one work of his which has come down to us. This is a very valuable book, because it gives a very vivid and correct notion of the state of the art of music at the time it was written. It has been printed and edited by Coussemaker, the fertile French historian, in the first volume of his admirable "Collection of Ancient Musical Treatises," and is worth studying on account of the variety of topics it embraces. There can be no doubt that he was one of the most learned and versatile writers of his period.'*

That Burney should rejoice in such a work and be moved to praise its author is only natural and just, and every Briton with a spark of *amor patriæ* in his composition will rejoice in the book being a piece of native handicraft, if we may use the term. The MS., setting aside matters of comparison with Guido,

* Naumann's 'History of Music,' pp. 560, 561.

Franco, or any other, shows beyond all reasonable doubt that this country, at the time the work was written (about the year 1230 A.D.), was taking—we must repeat it—a far more active part, and greater share, in the development of the first stages of musical art than have ever been credited to us.

Happily, we can go much farther, however, in the making of our present story, as well as in establishing the claim that the English musical influence at this time was immensely greater than is commonly supposed. There need be no hesitation in thus making Britain's musical merits known, for it is only her just due. The old country has such an evident brilliant future before it that the recounting of its ancient musical achievements will show how strongly linked is the new with the old. Britain's place and influence in the past only needs to be adequately known and realized to fire her young harmonious life to splendid art-doings in time to come.

It must be allowed that hitherto this country has not followed Germany and Italy in their great creative art-reaches; but such regions might have remained undiscovered, unexplored, and unproductive, save for the great part played by England in the early stages of theoretical musical development. It was England that invented much, and kept much alive; it was this country that brought down the materials of modern music which the great tone poets of Germany have applied and handled with such

glorious and immortal results. The whole musical world is under a great debt of gratitude to England for her pioneer musical work alone, and there is no other country that can claim so great a share in first musical development as can our own land.

Many excellent native scholars and musical disquisitionists, whose names and works deserved to be perpetuated, followed in the wake of Odington. Tunsted, John de Muris, and Torksey are notable among such tonal authorities.

Simon Tunsted (also spelt Tunstede) was an English Franciscan monk and Doctor of Divinity. He was born at Norwich about the year 1310, and died at Bruzard, in Suffolk, in 1369 A.D., so that he was probably alive in the reign of Edward I. He is one of the earliest native writers upon the theory of music, and there is every reason to be proud of him as a man of science and an able musician, inasmuch as no doubt whatever can be raised to cloud his personality as a leader of early English musical thought. Two works from his pen, '*De Musicâ Continuâ et Discreta cum Diagrammatibus*' and '*De Quatuor Principalibus in quibus totius Musicæ Radices Consistunt*', are preserved in MS. in the Bodleian Library at Oxford. This latter treatise has been edited and produced by Coussemaker, the French historian. Burney states that Tunsted 'was in such favour for his learning

and piety as to be unanimously chosen Provincial Master of all England.*

John de Muris, or Murus, second in our list, flourished *circa* 1330-1400, and although some doubt has obtained respecting his nationality, a con-

John de Muris. census of opinion fixes it as English.

While some writers have regarded him as a Norman and Italian, others have alluded to him as a highly-gifted French ecclesiastic. It is certain that he was a distinguished writer and musician who held the post of Chanter in the church of Notre Dame of Paris, becoming also a Doctor and Canon of the Sorbonne; and it is not unlikely that the holding of these appointments in France may account for his English origin being questioned.

He is known to have been the author of several valuable musical treatises, and some writers have sought to invest him with the honour of inventing

Muris and the Time-table. the musical Time-table; but Burney has disposed of that matter beyond reasonable doubt. In the first place, John de Muris, although a writer on Time characters in music, nowhere claims the honour of any inventions in the matter for himself. Among the MSS. which were bequeathed to the Vatican Library by one of the Queens of Sweden, there is, as Burney points out, a 'Compendium of Practical Music,' by Muris, in which the author treats of Time characters; but, instead of

* Burney, 'History of Music,' vol. ii., p. 395.

claiming honours for himself, the writer sets forth a chronological list of anterior musicians, who merited the title of inventors in musical notation. That Muris perpetuated and preserved much relating to notation that might otherwise have been lost is incontrovertible, and if it is for this labour only that he and other early English writers are celebrated, the honour paid them is well merited.

Undoubtedly the decision arrived at by Burney concerning these writings is just: 'Though he [Muris] has no title to the first invention of the time-table, he must certainly have been a great benefactor to practical music by his numerous writings on the subject, which doubtless threw new lights upon the art, as may be better imagined now from the gratitude of his successors, by whom he is so frequently quoted and commended.'*

We do not agree with the learned historian, however, when he deprecates Muris's writings merely because the lapse of years has rendered them 'totally useless and almost unintelligible' to a later generation.

The many musical works by Muris preserved in MS. include: '*Practica Cantus Mensurabilis*,' being **Muris'** a treatise on time or measured music; **Writings.** '*Ars Summaria Contrapuncti*,' or a compendium of counterpoint, in which the term 'counterpoint' is brought nearer to the time of Guido than

* Burney's 'History of Music,' vol. ii., p. 198.

is done by any other theoretical writer ; and a third work, ' *Theoremata Musica Versibus Explicata*, ' or musical theorems explained in verse—all in the Vatican Library. His most valuable treatise is the ' *Tractatus de Musica*, ' entitled likewise ' *Musica Speculativa*. ' These manuscript writings by Muris are to be found in the Bodleian, Corpus Christi College, and British Museum collections, but in some instances they appear to be duplicates, and not all separate tracts.

Muris seems to have been a ' stickler ' for accuracy in matters musical, as an extract from the ' *Speculum Musicæ*, ' a folio work written on vellum, and containing six hundred pages, wherein, among other matters, Muris dilates upon concords, well illustrates. He censures the singers of his day who dare to descant or compose—*i.e.*, make concords with their voices by supplying another part to the tenor or plain-song without any knowledge of scientific music. In his eyes they murdered the pure, simple harmony of his time, ' throwing sounds about at random, as awkward people throw stones at a mark without hitting it once in a hundred times. ' Here is the good master Muris's Latin translated into sixteenth-century English : ' Alas ! in these our dayes, some do stryve to glosse over theyr lacke of skyll with silly sayenges. This, cry they, is the *newe* method of discantynge, these be the *newe* concordes. Howbeit they grievously offend thereby both the hearing

and the understanding of suche as be skylded to judge of theyr defects ; for where we look for delight they do induce sadnesse. O incongruous sayenge ! O wretched glosse ! Irrational excuse ! O monstrous abuse ! O ! if the good old maysters of former tyme did hear suche descanters, what wolde they say or do ? Out of doubte they wolde thus chyde them and say, " This discant, whereof ye now make use, ye do not take it from *me* ; ye do in no wyse frame your songe to be concordaunt with me ; wherefore do ye thrust yourselves in ? Ye do not agree with me ; ye are an adversary and a scandal unto me. O that ye wolde be dumb ! This is not *concordynge* but most doatynge and delyrious dis-*cordynge*." '

Such ruling is, of course, most excellent ; and as harmony at its best, at such an early stage, would sound rather incongruous to modern ears, an insistence upon an accurate rendering, free of any liberties with the original, may well be pardoned of the early authorities.

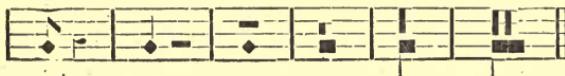
Another name that has escaped the general literary neglect of his period is that of John Torksey, or Torkessey, who rightly figures in the school of First

John Torksey. English musical authors. Burney refers to a very scarce and curious volume of MS. tracts, neatly written on vellum, which, before the Reformation, belonged to the monastery of Waltham Holy Cross, in Essex, and containing a

series of nine treatises by several writers, all relating to music. These would appear to have been transcribed and collected by the Precentor of Waltham Abbey (John Wylde), whose name appears on the first leaf, and his initials, 'J. W.', on the last. This MS. volume of tracts once belonged to Tallis, but in Burney's day the valuable book was the property of the Earl of Shelbourne, whose descendants may possibly still hold it.* One of these tracts, called '*Musica Guidonis Monachi*', is divided into two books. The first contains twenty-two chapters, in which the author treats of the monochord, the scale, the hand, ecclesiastical tones, solmization and clefs ; and ends with a battle between B flat and B natural. The prejudice and pedantry of the writer reach the culminating point in the second book, where he actually draws a parallel between the tone and semitone and Leah and Rachel, Jacob's wives. In another work entitled '*De Origine et Effectu Musice*', the author makes very great complaints against the fashionable singers of the time, who, he says, 'corrupt and deform the diatonic genus, by making the seventh of a key a semitone.' It becomes a curious study to see how the boldness of the musical innovators here mentioned was kept in check by the bigotry of those who founded their opinions solely on tradition ; for, although many practical musicians used the semitone, instead of the whole tone, before

* Burney's 'History of Music,' vol. ii., p. 413.

the key-note, in performance, none had the temerity to carry out the reform on paper. Perhaps the very fact of its being against the law gave an additional piquancy to the use of it; and thus we see that, whilst the ponderously learned were endeavouring to imprison the art within the narrow boundary of their own authority, it was, in fact, almost insensibly eluding their grasp, and moving onward into freedom and life beyond. Among the tracts, and numbered 'V.,' is one entitled '*Regulæ Magistri Johan Torksey*'; and another, 'VII.,' by Thomas Walsingham. Torksey's tract deals chiefly with the ancient time-table and notation of the period, concords, and discords. The author states that though there are only three specific square characters used in musical notation—the *large*, the *long*, and the *breve*—these are modified into six species of simple notes, thus :



to which are added the equivalent 'rests.'

By some means Torksey's name has become mixed with a John (or Thomas) of Tewkesbury, but there is little question of their being distinct personages. In the Bodleian Library is a MS. ascribed to Thomas (or John) of Tewkesbury, at the end of which it is stated that it was finished at the University of Oxford in 1351. A chapter occurs in it headed '*De Figuris inventis a Fran-*

cone,' setting out the labours of Franco in inventing the time characters. Possibly the author of this MS. was the same John of Tewkesbury, a musical friar, who in the year 1388 presented the book called the 'Four Principles of Music' * to the Minor Friars of Oxford, by the authority and consent of Master Thomas of Kingsbury ; the latter doubtless one who had a taste for collecting either original or transcribed musical MSS. for the benefit of the monks and abbey of Tewkesbury. On the whole, there would seem to have been at least two musical enthusiasts and *littérateurs* helping forward musical matters at Tewkesbury at about this time : this cultured friar and our original author, Torksey.

Robert Handlo must not be forgotten. He was another of these native writers on music early in the fourteenth century. Little is known concerning the

Robert Handlo. life of this worthy beyond that he was the author of a musical treatise dated 1326 A.D., and entitled '*Regulæ cum Maximo Magistri Franconis, cum additionibus aliorum musicorum, compilatæ à Robert de Handlo*' — a commentary upon Franco's tract—'*Ars Cantus Mensurabilis*,' with additional discoveries of other musicians— which latter the contents hardly justify. However, it is a scarce tract, treating of musical time, notation,

* Tunsted, it will be remembered, was the author of this work, '*Artis Musicæ Quatuor Principalia*,' which was much duplicated, possibly, among others, by Torksey himself ; hence its authorship has been wrongly ascribed to him.

etc. Unfortunately, the original MS. was destroyed by fire when Ashburnham House, Westminster, perished. Happily, the treatise had been copied, however, by Dr. Pepusch—the industrious German musician working in England early in the eighteenth century—and his transcription is in the British Museum. Coussemaker has printed the tract in the first volume of his excellent collection, '*Scriptorum de Musica Medii Ævi*'.

Burney speaks depreciatingly of Handlo's work,* preferring the literal copying from Franco to the original annotations; but, despite this, the book was evidently regarded as a standard text-book for several centuries—since Morley, the Elizabethan composer, recommends it, more than two hundred years after, in his 'Plain and Early Introduction to Practical Music.'

Another addition that must be made to the roll of distinguished English writers upon music is Thomas Walsingham. In what for distinction's sake we may term the Waltham Abbey volume of MS. tracts, there is one numbered '*VII. Regulæ Magistri Thomæ Walsingham.*' This treatise deals with the whole science of notation, time, etc., of music as it then existed. Burney speaks highly of the work: 'Walsingham has, indeed, taken great pains to remove this difficulty (the measuring of such ancient music

* Burney, 'History of Music,' vol. ii., p. 195.

as was composed before the use of bars) by explanations and numerous examples in notes ; and I do not remember to have seen such light thrown on the subject by any other author before Morley, when, indeed, instruction, except for the perusal and performance of old Masters, was too late, as the time-table had undergone many changes, and composers had learned to express their thoughts in a new and more intelligible manner.* This was our Walsingham.

Another interesting work, numbered 'VIII.' in this same volume of MSS., is ascribed to Lionel Power, and is entitled 'Of the Cordis of Musike.' It

Lionel Power. appears to have been written about the middle of the fourteenth century. Burney speaks of it as 'a short treatise, written in English, and with its Saxon letters bearing marks of considerable antiquity.' 'It seems to be the most ancient musical tract that has been written,' records the learned historian, 'or at least preserved, in our vernacular tongue.'

Then he proceeds to give an extract from it : 'This Tretis is contynued upon the Gamme for hem that will be syngers, or makers, or techers. For the ferst thing of alle ye must kno how many cordis of discant ther be. As olde men sayen, and as men syng nowadayes, ther be nine ; but whoso will syng mannerli and musikeli, he may not lepe to the

* Burney, 'History of Music,' vol. ii., p. 421.

fifteenth in no maner of discant ; for it longeth to no manny's uoys, and so ther be but eyght accordis after the discant now used. And whosoever will be a maker, he may use no mo than eyght, and so ther be but eyght fro unison unto the thyrteenth. But for the quatribil syghte ther be nine accordis of discant, the unison, thyrd, fyfth, syxth, eyghth, tenth, twelfth, thyrteenth, and fiftenth, of the which nyne accordis fyve be perfyte, and fower be imperfyte. The fyve perfyte be the unison, fyfth, eyghth, twelfth, and fiftenth ; the fower imperfyte be the thyrd, syxth, tenth and thyrteenth ; also these maist ascende and decende wyth alle maner of cordis excepte two accordis perfyte of one kynde as two unisons, two fyfths, two eyghths, two twelfths, two fiftenth, wyth none of these thou maist neyther ascende neyther descende ; but thou must consette these accordis togedir and medele hem wel, as I shall enform the. Ferst thou shall medele wyth a thyrd a fyfth, wyth a syxth an eyghth, wyth an eyghth a tenth, with a tenth a twelfth, wyth a thyrteenth a fiftenth ; under the which nyne accordis three syghtis be conteyned, the mene syght, the trebil syght, and the quadribil syght : and others also of the nyne accordis how thou shalt hem ymagyne betwene the playn song and the discant, here folloeth the ensample—Ferst to enforme a chylde in hys counterpoynt, he must ymagyne hys unison the eyghth note fro the playn song, benethe

hys thyrd ; the syxth note benethe hys fyfth ; the fowerth benethe hys syxth ; the thyrd note benethe hys eygth, even wyth the playne-song ; hys tenth the thyrd note above, hys twelfth the fyfth note above, hys thyrteenth the syxth above, hys fyfteenth the eygth note above the playn-song.' All of which is interesting, undoubtedly, to the student of theory, and to all acquainted with the intricacies of primitive harmony and counterpoint, but not over-entertaining to the ordinary reader !

The sum and substance of this teaching as evolved by Burney, out of the characters used by Master Power, is the following, which, with its flavour of old ecclesiastical music, is not unpleasing :

The treatise concludes with these words : ' Who wil kenne hys Gamme wel, and the ymagynations thereof, and of hys accordis, as I have rehersed in

this Treatise afore, he may not faile of hys Counterpoint in short tyme.'—LYONEL POWER.

The concluding tract, No. IX., in this remarkable volume of musical MSS. is by one Chilston. It is a 'Treatise of Musical Proportions: their Nature and Denominations,' 'ferst in English **Chilston.**' and then in Latyne,' in which the author deals with the philosophy of music, and goes over much the same ground as the writers of the tracts already mentioned.

There was one more musical author of this First English School period—Ælred Theinred, or Thinedred, by name, who wrote an interesting and fairly exhaustive dissertation on tones, keys, **Theinred.** and intervals. This musical treatise is entitled '*De Legitimis Ordinibus Pentachordorum et Tetrachordorum*', and is preserved in the Bodleian Library. It bears date 1371 A.D. Of the life of Theinred little more is known than that he was a Benedictine monk, and Precentor of his monastery at Dover. His pen, however, has preserved his name, and provided one more feature of interest in the early annals of English music.

Here, then, is an array of pioneer authors, Englishmen beyond all reasonable doubt, who wrote upon native musical art, and helped to frame the grammar or science of written music at a period long before the time when other European countries took up the subject from Guido and Franco. The names of

such men and their works deserve to be honoured and perpetuated, for they performed a great task at a critical stage of music's history—men and makers who it must be declared have been studiously avoided by foreign musical historians, and too easily forgotten by their own countrymen.

It will help the reader better to appreciate the musical situation that prevailed for a long time in England if this feature of 'Time' about which our

Musical early authors thought and wrote so much 'Time.' is explained. The first broad basis for time in music was the fixing of two kinds of measures only—one of three beats, called 'perfect measure,' the other of two beats, or 'imperfect measure.' In the mediæval age the word *Tempus*, or time, marked the relative durations of the breve and semibreve. *Modus* and *Prolatio*—two other laws in early time canon—affected the other known notes. This was an important step towards the perfection of time in music, and as such deserves attention under each head :

(a) Prolation was the system of determining the relationship of semibreves to the breve, or minims to the semibreve. The following examples will illustrate this, and afford the reader a sight of the circle clef, as well as the perfect and imperfect bars or measures.

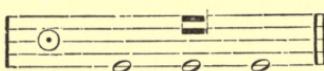
The dot within the circle, or time signature, implied that the time was perfect. The absence of the dot showed it to be imperfect. A whole circle

meant major, a broken circle minor. (β) Modus was applied to the system for dividing the *maxima* note of mediæval music into *longs*, and *longs* into *breves*. Like *Prolatio* and *Tempus*, three of a next lesser quantity corresponded to one of the next larger value, and constituted a trinary division, or perfect measure. When two beats became the equivalent, this was a binary division, or imperfect measure. (γ) *Tempus* was the dividing of *breves* into *semibreves*.

Franco refers to notes as 'perfect,' *i.e.*, of three proportionate durations; and 'imperfect,' or of two equal durations, as above stated. By this division musicians were enabled to compose either in duple or triple measure. In perfect time the breve was of the value of three semibreves, while in imperfect time the breve was equal to two semibreves. Perfect and imperfect time were by some writers also denoted by a circle and semicircle respectively, without reference to dots.

This circle (○), one of the oldest time characters in

Major Prolation (Perfect).



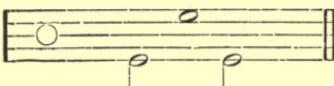
Minor Prolation (Perfect).



The same (Imperfect).



The same (Imperfect).



early modern music, was placed at the beginning of compositions, and indicated that the time of the work was triple, or perfect—and that each note corresponded to three of the next longest kind. Sometimes the  had the figure 3 attached to it—. A broken circle, , indicated imperfect, or duple time—or a note equivalent to two of the next longest species. It was frequently figured . From this broken circle came the  which marks all common time in modern music. The question of the major or minor key had to be gathered from the music itself. Besides this circle, mediæval musicians made use of the cypher $\frac{3}{1}$ to express the power of three semibreves for that of the breve ; and of the cypher $\frac{3}{2}$ to express the power of three minims for the semibreve.

Thus, from these two broad divisions of time—the perfect and the imperfect—we derive the present two principal kinds of time : common time, with two or four equal parts in a bar, and triple time, with three equal parts in a bar—both of which can be subdivided into simple and compound.

Something should be said here relating to the musical instruments in vogue during the period **Grosse teste.** which we are considering. When in the next chapter we turn to Chaucer, we shall find him throwing much light upon this in-

teresting aspect of English musical practice, which, like other features of the art, had made great strides since the Norman ingress. The Normans brought several musical instruments, and while thoughtful minds like Odington, Torksey, and Walsingham were gathering the elements of music, and shaping them into intelligible grammatical form and principle for all ages, a growing love for musical colouring was deepening among the English people. They could not resist an intuitive passion for concords and sweet song, and as every new instrument came within their hearing, it was welcomed with delight, and soon found its especial friends. The harp was a particular favourite, and was regarded as an instrument of great virtue, as the following episode related of Grosseteste, the learned and pious Bishop of Lincoln, who died in 1253 A.D.,* indicates :

‘ I shall telle as I have herde
Of the bysshope Seynt Roberde,
Hys toname (surname) is Grosteste,
Of Lynkolme, so seyth the geste.
He lolde moche to hear the harpe,
For mannes wytte it makyth sharpe.
Next hys chambre, besyde hys study,
Hys harper’s chambre was fast thereby.
Many times, by nightes and dayes,
He had solace of notes and layes.

* A legend of bells heard in the sky by several people on the night of Grosseteste’s death, in the autumn, testifies to the regard in which he was held by the people.

One askede hem the resun why
 He hadde delyte in minstrelsy :
 He answerede hem on thys manere
 Why he helde the harpe so dere—
 ““The vertu of the harpe, through skylle and ryght,
 Wil destroye the fendi’s* might :
 And to the Cros by gode skeyl
 Ye the harpe lykened weyl.
 Therefore, gode men, ye shall lere
 Whan ye any gleman here
 To wurschep God at your powere,
 As Davyd seyth in the Sautere,
 In harpe and tabour and symphan gle.
 Wurschep God, in trumps and sautre,
 In cordes, in organes, and bells ringyng
 In all these wurschepe the hevene-Kyng.””

We are indebted mostly to the art of illumination for nearly all that we know respecting early English musical instruments. This art was largely followed

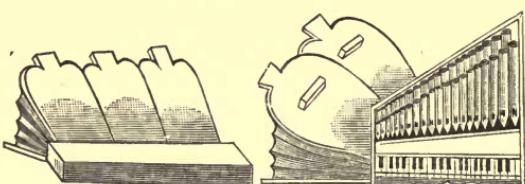
Early English Instru- ments. in England by the religious orders. The early poets and authors have left us many references to the instruments in their wondrous language, but it was the monks and patient cultured souls in the convents and monasteries who gave us the actual delineation of the instruments. Through long hours of the day and night did the monks in the scriptorium labour over the pages of missals and religious books, which testify to the loving zeal of those who painted their wondrous colours and illuminations. In this way have the forms and details of instruments been recorded,

* Fiend’s.

which might otherwise only have come down to us by name.

It is probable that the representations, where met with, in these old religious books are strictly accurate, so exact were the ungrudging workers who copied and engrossed them. These were almost invariably ecclesiastics, however, and this fact should be borne in mind in considering the development of early English musical instruments. The priests and monks were determinedly opposed to secular music, tending as it did to divert attention from sacred art, and for this reason would do nothing to perpetuate worldly instruments ; apart from which the fitness of things would permit them to introduce into the ecclesiastical books representations of such instruments only as were allowed in the Church service. Instrumental material was more extensive and varied, therefore, than the manuscripts and illuminations of the period would seem to show.

The organ
was coming
more into use
in the churches,
and favour was
gradually ex-
tending to



REGALS, OR SMALL PORTABLE ORGANS.

towards the regal, a small portable organ. Another name given to this instrument was 'portatives,' from the Latin verb *portare*, to carry. A reference to

it occurs in the poem of the *Hoblate*, written in 1450 A.D. :

'Clarions loud knellis,
Portativis and bellis.'

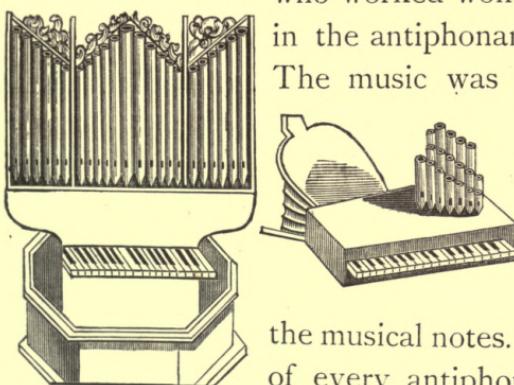
This illuminating was performed in the scriptorium of the monastery. There, in charge of the *chartularius* or superintendent, sat the artist-scribes,

who worked wondrous colourings in the antiphonaries and missals.

The music was written with the words in connected lines, and over these the neumes, or, when invented,

the musical notes. The first letter of every antiphon or psalm was richly illuminated. Occasionally one whole line, or even two, was

coloured; or six letters would be painted red, another six blue, the next six green, and so on. The letter at the beginning of every piece always received the greatest attention from these patient monks, and some of these initial letters are marvellous specimens of taste and talent. Not only are colours of great richness and rare blending employed, but frequently gold and precious stones are worked into these illuminations with vast effect. The initial T was a much-favoured letter, and in some religious books



PORTATIVE, OR PORTABLE, ORGANS.

this extends, like a great tree, over the top and sides of the page, storing all that is written under it.

The skill and materials for this workmanship would almost seem to have perished with the workers. The beautiful colours were mostly produced, however, with pigments made of gums, cinnabar, pyrites, juices of herbs, varnish, indigo and ochre. The beautiful black notes and lettering—superior to our common black ink concoctions—was made of soot or ivory black mixed with water.

The accounts and inventories of churches and private establishments abound with entries relating to the care or repairs of organs during the thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth centuries.

Gervase, the monk of Canterbury, referring to the burning of the cathedral in 1174, tells of the destruction of its organ, and there is no doubt that

at this date primitive instruments were **Organs.** general in the abbeys and churches of the country. At St. Alban's and Croyland it is recorded that there were 'organa solemnia in introita ecclesiæ superius situata,' and smaller organs were in the choir, hence the term 'choir-organ.' Chaucer's references—

' His vois was merrier than the merry organ
On masse days that in the churches gon.

' And while that organs maden melodie
To God alone thus in her heart sung she '

—imply that they were common enough when he

wrote. Sometimes two organs, one large, the other small, were placed in the church. Such was the case in the fourteenth century at Uley Church, Gloucestershire, where a monk or clerk, not a lay organist, accompanied the Plainsong.

Frequent entries in parish records supply incontrovertible proof of the wide use of the organ throughout England. An interesting entry is that in the accounts of Ely Cathedral for the year 1407, wherein the Precentor accounts for items employed in making the organ. These particulars supply a clue to the calibre of these early organs; but quantities and money values differed so much from ours, and the details were often so slight, that we must not draw hasty conclusions as to results therefrom:

	£	s.	d.
20 stones of lead	0 16 9
4 white horses' hides for 4 pairs of bellows	...	0 7 8	
Ashen hoops for the bellows	...	0 0 4	
10 pairs of hinges	...	0 1 10	
The carpenter 8 days making the bellows	...	0 2 8	
12 springs	...	0 0 3	
1 pound of glue	...	0 0 1	
1 pound of tin	...	0 0 3	
6 calf skins	...	0 2 6	
12 sheep skins	...	0 2 4	
2 pounds of quicksilver	...	0 2 0	
Wire, nails, cloth, hoops, and staples	...	0 1 0	
Fetching the organ-builder and his board, 13 weeks	...	0 40 0	
Total	...	<u>£3 17 8</u>	

From these memoranda it is more likely that they were for repairs, and that it was the 'expense of making *good* an organ' rather than the building of a new instrument for which the materials were required. They are manifestly insufficient for an average fourteenth-century instrument, especially such a one as would be required in a cathedral.

A curious custom appears to have prevailed in these early times, which, while it redounds to the good nature and feeling prevailing among neighbouring ecclesiastics, also throws light upon the construction and portable character of fourteenth and fifteenth century organs. One church used to lend its organ to another church. Thus, in the accounts of St. Margaret's, Westminster, for the year 1508, we find an item 'For bringing the Organs of the Abbey' (evidently the portable instruments of the Westminster foundation) 'into the church, and beryng them home agayne ijd.' Not an extravagant expenditure, it is true, but it must be remembered that money values in those days were different from what they are now, and twopence may have been, after all, only a porter's 'tip.' Another entry is :

'1485. To John Hewe,* for repairing the organ at the altar of B.V.M. in the Cathedral Church, and for carrying the same to the House of the Minorite Brethren, and for

* John Hewe, organ-builder, was born at York in 1485, and was probably a son of the above. William Wotton was another organ-builder.

bringing back the same to the Cathedral Church, 13*s. 9d.*'

Such instrumental aid indicates that the organs were placed in close proximity to the singers—a natural and desirable arrangement, which should not have been departed from even nowadays, and from which we, no doubt, get the term 'choir' organ.

Matthew Paris, the English historian, who died in 1259, speaks of a species of musical instrument called 'bourdons' which were in use in the church of St. Alban's in his day; and probably other churches of importance were similarly supplied.

The bellows in the early instruments appear to have been a perpetual trouble to the clergy, for entry after entry occurs of disbursements for repairs. The rodent tribe, not less active in those days than now, and with considerably more freedom for their proclivities and antics, played even greater havoc with the leather joints than they do now, necessitating constant patching and mending. Consequently there are repeated entries in the old books like the following :

- '1419. For constructing two pair of bellows for the organ, 46*s. 8d.*'
- 'For constructing the ribs of the bellows of the same organ, by John Cowper, 12*d.*'
- '1457. To John Roose [the first authenticated English organ-builder], brother of the Order of Preaching Friars, who repaired and restored the organ at the altar of the B.V.M. in the Cathedral Church of the City of York, and one pair of bellows for the same, 36*s. 8d.*'

‘1469. To brother John for constructing two pair of bellows for the great organ, and repairing of the same, 15s. 2d.’

An excellent example was set in these early times of bequeathing gifts of organs and money for their repair to churches. Sometimes the choristers were not forgotten. One such bequest appears in the accounts of St. Mary’s Church, Sandwich, as early as 1444 :

‘1444. Ress^d the bequeath of Thomas Boryner unto a payre of organys, iiiij*l*l.’

Another item is :

‘1463. I wille y eche man y^t syngit prykked songe on y^e daye of my enterment at our ladyes messe had ijd., and y^e players at y^e organys ijd., and eche childe jd., and y^t yei preyid to dyner the same day.’

In 1475 Lord John Beauchamp willed

‘xx marks to be bestowed in vestments and stuff, besides an organ of my own.’

About the year 1450 Abbot Whethamstede, of St. Albans, gave what must have been a princely sum in those days, namely, £50, for an organ for the Abbey. Similar instances of liberality on the part of pious clergy and churchmen abound in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, benefactions which reflect the cultured tastes not less than the piety and goodness of the large-hearted donors. Well-known London and country churches whose archives hold some of these interesting particulars are : Westminster Abbey ; St. Mary-at-Hill, London ; St. Andrew’s, Eastcheap ; St. Helen’s,

Bishopsgate ; Allhallows, Barking ; St. Margaret's, Westminster ; St. Andrew's, Holborn ; Magdalen College, Oxford ; York Cathedral ; Trinity College, Cambridge ; Winchester Cathedral ; Holbeach Church, Lincolnshire ; Ely Cathedral ; Worcester Cathedral ; and many others.

Among wind instruments besides the organ were the horn, trumpet, bagpipes, and flageolet. The drum and tabor were popular, as was also that peculiar instrument the hurdy-gurdy. Bells were employed both for sacred and secular musical pur-

poses. They were generally in chimes of five small bells, which were suspended from a frame and played by means of hammers. Cymbals were, no doubt, common enough, although representations of them do not appear in the early MSS. Of stringed instruments there were several. The old *crwth*, identified with England's musical history from the first, was very popular at this period. It was generally a three-stringed instrument, played with a bow, and therefore a sort of primitive violin. With the English min-



AN ANGEL PLAYING
UPON A THREE-
STRINGED GIGUE
(THIRTEENTH
CENTURY).

strels it was a favourite, just as its equivalent, the *rota*, was with the wandering musicians of France and Germany. In addition to the *crwth* and the

harp, already referred to, there were the viol, the gigue or fiddle, the psaltery or shawm, which was a dulcimer played with one or two plectrums or with the fingers, and, lastly, the rote or zither, sometimes called the cittern. Our poet, John Gower [1320—1402], contemporary with Chaucer, mentions the 'giterne,' which was probably the guitar. Another instrument to which he makes reference is the cytolen or citole—*i.e.*, the zithern or cither—an instrument that is chiefly popular in Switzerland at the present day, though of late years it has been brought again into England. Such was mainly the instrumental material which gladdened the hearts of music-lovers in England, and helped to make life brighter and better here in far-off days of five hundred years ago.

PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES.

- ‘History of Music’ - - - - - Burney.
- ‘Dictionary of Music and Musicians’ - - - - - Brown.
- ‘English Songs’ - - - - - Ritson.
- ‘Popular Music of the Olden Time’ - - - - - Chappell.
- ‘Social England’ - - - - - Cassell.
- ‘History of Music’ - - - - - Naumann and Ouseley.
- ‘Anecdotes of Music’ - - - - - Burgh.
- ‘History of England’ - - - - - Hume.
- ‘Musical Instruments’ - - - - - Engel.
- ‘History of Music’ - - - - - Hawkins.
- ‘Songs and Ballads of the West’ - - - - - { Baring-Gould and Sheppard.
- ‘County Songs’ - - - - - { Broadwood and Fuller-Maitland.
- The Musical Times* - - - - - Novello.

CHAPTER IX.

SECOND PERIOD—ENGLISH SCHOOL TO TUDOR TIMES.

Historians and the Grammatical Development of Music—The Nature of Early Musical Materials—England's Share in formulating Music—The Unshaped Natural Music—First Grammar and Polyphonous Music—The Borderland of Descriptive Music—Raw Material—Chaucer—The 'Canterbury Tales'—Chaucer's Musical References—The 'Angelus ad Virginem' Song—Davy and Longland's References—Native Reasoning Musicians—Dunstable—Tinctoris on Dunstable—Hamboys—The Supposed First English 'Doctor of Music'—Saintwix—Abyngdon—His Several Appointments—Abyngdon the First Cambridge 'Bachelor of Music'—Hothby—His Treatises—Wydow or Wydewe—Music at the Accession of Henry V.—King Henry's Objection to Street-music—The Agincourt Victory Song—Its Words and Music—Edward IV. founds the Chapel Royal and King's Band—Edward IV. and his Minstrels—Minstrels in Private Families—Dress and Pay of the Last Minstrels—Dr. Bull's Epitaph on the Wandering Musicians—Reaction in Secular Music—A Thirteenth-century Dance Tune—Sparseness of Early Secular Music—The Explanation—The Invention of Printing—Its Influence upon Music—Caxton and Wynken de Worde's First Music Types—'Sumer is icumen in' to Dunstable hiatus.

HISTORIANS invariably, but erroneously, credit the Netherlanders with the honour of giving musical

art its grammatical foundation and early development in the rising Middle Age years which preceded the **Musical Grammar and Theory** that Renaissance period following the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. Music, youngest of the arts, was just beginning to assert itself at the close of the Mediæval period, and we have to state that England played a great and worthy part in that movement.

It will often have occurred to inquiring minds how music came to be so far behind other arts in its rise and development as a science and art at this time. Yet the explanation is not far off. Unlike the art of the poet, sculptor, painter, and preacher, there were no materials at hand upon which to base a tangible musical record and argument until learning and science had made great headway. Music had to find its materials out of other arts, sound not being tangible in form and materialistic in the sense that wood or stone is.

Then, again, being a mathematical and theoretical art, no foundations could be laid, nor a structural form given to music, until a vast amount of speculation and calculation had been propounded, worked out, tested, and reduced to rule. The deductions drawn and approved became the first base of a formulated theoretical system. It is manifest that such an elementary musical grammar could only come when learning and education generally had made some headway here, which was

long after some of the most brilliant periods in the history of other arts and sciences.

With musical material and the means of its expression once formed, the art took eagle's pinions, never stopping in its great upward, onward course. All that the Eastern nations, the Greek philosophers, or the improvisatores had done for music was but little compared with the great art which it almost immediately became as soon as it was once a book-study. The Greek scales and Gregorian tones, with their bare monodic character, were as nothing compared to the idea of formulating, regulating, and interweaving the same. This notion supplied the grand starting-point of the glorious structure of musical



HUNTING WITH HOUND AND HORN.

(From carving under a seat in the choir of Sherborne Minster,
time of Edward III.)

art of to-day, and in generating and developing this conception England played a

greater part than did any other country. Secular music—the folk-song, the ballad, the traditional tunes, dance tunes, indoor and outdoor music of all kinds—existed here in abundance; but this, with the hymns and tunes of the Church, lacked one great aid—it could

not be perpetuated, accurately recorded, and, beyond all, logically expressed. Whatever had been the case with the original Britons and Welsh in the matter of musical systems, nothing of the kind existed in England at the period which we are considering—that time when music, especially secular music, was an unregulated, ill-ordered, shapeless art throughout the country. There were instruments, tunes, and dance rhythms without number, but there was no method of husbanding all this, of making it the vehicle of a reasonable art, or of using it in combination and in order, according as varying circumstances and conditions required. This vocal and instrumental material might be to-day where it was four hundred odd years ago save for the happy thought that overtook men's minds of moulding the art into a shape which, while it would be understandable to all musicians, would permit of development at the hands of those who applied themselves particularly to theory and composition.

Theoretical art needed the early labours of native theorists like Dunstable and others to effect a vast change in the region of music. What the English and subsequently the Netherlands theorists accomplished meant the first opening up of that vast mine of polyphonous realism in musical art which has yielded the priceless tone-treasures which we possess to-day. From such fourteenth and fifteenth century speculations and deductions came the general accep-

tance of music as a science. 'Sumer is icumen in' had been written long before, but it was an exceptional native mind among a small band of native composers that produced this fine piece of part-music, —a sample of polyphonous art that is unequalled by any Continental work of the period, and which proves that there was in England, as early as the thirteenth century, a school of musicians which was in advance of anything possessed by the Netherlands at the same period. With the labours of Dunstable and other early contrapuntists, theoretical music became a worthy subject for study, and men with the highest reasoning instincts devoted their attention to it—one gradually, but surely, improving upon another, until the grammar of harmony and science of counterpoint and fugue was evolved and gathered within the prescribed limits of text-books, each one of which did but serve as the basis for another.

Yet it was not the formulating of theories and the perfecting of a musical science merely which made the labours of the English and Netherlands theorists of this period so valuable. The growth of mensural music, the controlling of melodic outline, and then the laws by which four-part music could be constructed, gave us the empty habitation—the structural edifice, with its walls and rooms. But the whole wanted furnishing—making comfortable, enjoyable.

This bare art state was what our early theorists

remedied. We were not to have merely a language wherewith music could be expressed according to approved law and rule, but this systematized art was to assume its chief quality, that character which gives it the power of fullest poetical expression. A severe mathematical music system, evolved from rules classified and arranged, was by no means to be despised; yet it was immeasurably more valuable and satisfactory for musicians of such early times to find themselves upon the borderland of descriptive, illustrative music. All the colouring element of secular musical resource—vocal and instrumental—was at the will of the composer. With part-writing enjoined and practised, composers could begin to give colour and effect to their compositions, not only by an extension of the voice parts, but by drawing upon the instrumental resources at hand, which were plentiful and varied enough, especially in secular musical walks.

It is true that our early theorists did not avail themselves greatly of this material, so that the growth in musical colour and tone-painting was slow indeed; but this is attributable to sacred music almost solely occupying their attention. Here colour and effect were proscribed rather than encouraged, and the introduction of orchestral aid, other than the droning organ, was unallowable. Largely as secular music was practised by the people, and numerous as the popular instruments were,

some time elapsed between the fixing of our musical grammar and the labours of our first contrapuntists ere they entered the domain of secular art to give rein to their ingenuity and fancy. For very many years secular art went along independent of Church music, prescribed rule, method or order. It still remained the improvised art of the travelling musician, the inborn accomplishment of the lad and lass of the village. Only here and there in England was there an inquiring mind, a cultured man of letters and philosophy, willing to devote himself to the labour of divining and investigating the possibilities of this wondrous science—music. We shall see presently who were these reasoning musical minds.

Fittingly enough, England's first great poet, Geoffrey Chaucer (1328-1400), supplies us with some of the most valuable of the scanty material

Chaucer. that we possess relating to music in Eng-

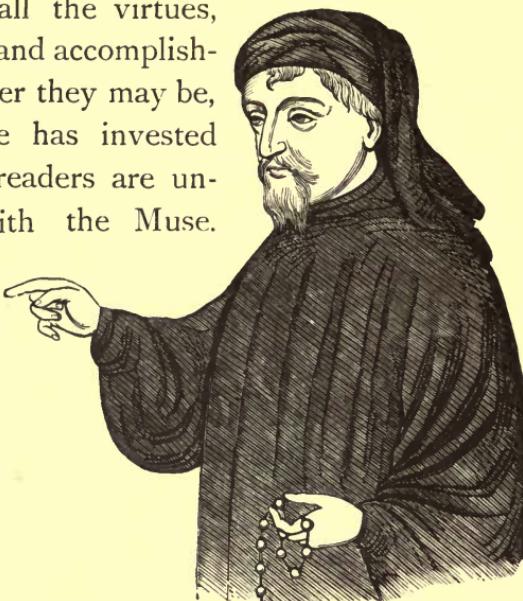
land. This 'father' of English poetry—superior to Gower or other contemporaries, and unsurpassed until Shakespeare arrived, for his language, perspicuity, and versification—never tires in his reference to music, musicians, and musical instruments. If he was not a practical musician himself, he was the next best thing to it, since he was a close observer of, and great enthusiast in, all that related to the art and its bearing upon the national life and character. The candid Caxton declared that 'for his swate wrytyng in our tongue he may

well have the name of a laureat poete,' which the musical author of to-day, indebted as he is to Chaucer for much light upon an interesting period in the national musical history, will do more than endorse. If we may judge of the estimation in which music was held by our countrymen during the fourteenth century from the writings of Chaucer, it must have been at least equal to that of any other epoch of their history ; for throughout his works he never loses an opportunity of describing, or alluding to its general use, and of bestowing it as an accomplishment upon the pilgrims, heroes and heroines of his several tales and poems, whenever he can do so with propriety.

Chaucer for his powers of observation and knowledge of mankind has seldom been surpassed in any age, and the uncontrolled imaginative mind of the poet might readily lay him open to draw upon a vast accumulation of knowledge not necessarily always indigenous to the soil concerned. Thus, Dr. Burney very properly observes that 'as this venerable bard was frequently an imitator and translator of French and Italian writers, whose works have already been shown to abound with passages relative to music, both vocal and instrumental, some deduction should perhaps be made for what he says of it in stories not of his own invention, and where the scene is laid in foreign countries.*

* 'History of Music' (Burney), vol. ii., p. 372.

This precautionary mood need not be extended to his 'Canterbury Tales,' wherein all the characters he so nicely delineates and discriminates are English. We may safely regard as national, and take to ourselves, all the virtues, vices, defects, and accomplishments, whatever they may be, with which he has invested them. Few readers are unacquainted with the Muse. Twenty-nine persons of both sexes, of professions and employments as different as invention could suggest, together with Chaucer himself, making in all thirty, are supposed to set out from the Tabard Inn, in Southwark,* on a



GEOFFREY CHAUCER.

(From *Harleian MS.*)

* Formerly the lodging of the Abbot of Hyde, near Winchester. The sign *tabarde* signified a short jacket, or sleeveless coat, open on both sides, with a square collar, and 'hanging sleeves.' The *tabarde* was the proper habit of a servant, and all the knaves in a pack of cards are so dressed. The host in Chaucer's time was Henry Bailie, a merry fellow, who was blessed with a shrew for his wife. This circumstance, however, did not stifle all his humour, judging by the quantity Chaucer drew from him.

pilgrimage to the shrine of St. Thomas-à-Becket, in the Cathedral Church of Canterbury. This motley company consisted of a knight, a 'squire—his son, and his yeoman—or servant; a prioress, a nun, and three priests—her attendants; a monk, a friar, a merchant, a clerk of Oxford, a serjeant-at-law, a franklin—or gentleman, a haberdasher, a carpenter, a weaver, a dyer, a tapiser—or maker of tapestry, a cook, a ship-man—or master of a trading vessel, a doctor of physic, the wife of a weaver of Bath, a parson, a ploughman—or farmer, a miller, a manciple, a reeve, a summoner, a pardoner, and Chaucer himself—who was a courtier, a scholar, and a poet. Quite a bright lot to go a-tramping!

Most of these were, after the manner of the times, endowed with some musical ability, or, if not, Chaucer at least credits them with it. Thus, the 'squire, besides possessing every courtly qualification necessary in those days—

'Singing he was or floyting* all the day.'

In addition to which

'He andè songès make, and well endite
Juste† and eke dance, and wel pourtrai and write.'

Then the dainty, cynical, 'mincing' prioress does not escape. Of her and her chanting we learn :

* Fluting.

† Fence.

‘And she was clepèd Madame Eglantine ;
 Full wel she sangè the service divine
 Entuned in hir nose ful swetely,’

the last two lines being generally true respecting a nun’s singing.

The monk was a jolly fellow and sportsman to boot, whose music began and ended with the sounds of hoofs, hounds, and the clanging of bits and spurs :

‘And whan he rode, men mighte his bridel here
 Gingéling in a whistling wind as clere
 And eke as loud as doth the chapel belle.’

The mendicant friar, called also a *limitour* (*i.e.*, a friar licensed to beg within a certain district), possessed qualities which rendered him a universal favourite :

‘And certainly he hadde a mery note
 Wel coude he singe, and plaien on the rote—
 In his harping, when that he had songe,
 His eyes twinkeled in his head aright,
 As dou the starrès in a frosty night.’

The Oxford clerk was a model :

‘Sonning in moral virtue was his speech
 And gladly would he learn, and gladly teach.’

So fond was he of books and study, that he loved Aristotle better

‘Than robès riche, or fidel, or sautrie,’
 and every parson might do worse than emulate him.

The miller, too, was a musician :

‘A baggèpipe wel couthe he blowe, and soun
And therewithal he brought us out of town.’

The summoner and pardoner both sang. To the one Chaucer gives a coarse bass voice, while the other, just arrived from Rome, without a beard, sings as a soprano :

‘A vois he had as small as hath a gote.’

After telling us that he sung, ‘Come hither, love, to me,’ which was probably the beginning of a favourite song at that time, the poet adds :

‘This sompnour* bare to him a stiff burdoun,†
Was never trump of half so great a soun.’

It would seem that the pardoner himself put no small estimate upon his powers, since he thus jovially announces his own style in the pulpit :

‘Lordings, quoth he, in church when I preach,
I paine me to have a hautain speech.
And ring it out as round as goeth a bell,
For I can all by rote that I tell.’

The pardoner’s singing in church did not escape Chaucer’s observation :

‘He was in church a noble ecclesiast:
Well could he read a lesson or a story,
But alderbest he sang an offertory ;

* Summoner or apparitor. † *I.e.*, sings the bass.

For well he knew when that song was sung
 He must preach and well afile his tongue
 To win silver, as he right well could,
 Therefore he sang the merrier and loud.'

In the pardoner's tale is the earliest mention by any English author of the lute :

'In flanders whilom was a campagnie
 Of yongè folk, that haunteden folie,
 As hazard, riot, stewès, and tavèrnes ;
 Whereas with harpès, lutes, and gitèrnes
 They dance and play,' etc.

The parish clerk's instruments in the miller's tale are adapted to his profession. On the whole, he must have been a merry fellow, for

'In tunsty manir culth he trip and daunce,
 After the scole of Oxenford (Oxford) tho',
 And with his legges casten to and fro,
 Could playen songès on a small ribible ;*
 Thereto he song sometime a loud quinible,†
 And as well could he play on a giterne.'

Of the same individual's singing we learn :

'He singeth brokking,‡ as a nightingale.'

The poor scholar, Nicholas, is a performer on the psaltry. Among his other talents was that of being able to sing well :

'And all above there lay a gay psaltry,
 On which he made on nightès melody

* The diminutive of rebec, a small viol with three strings.

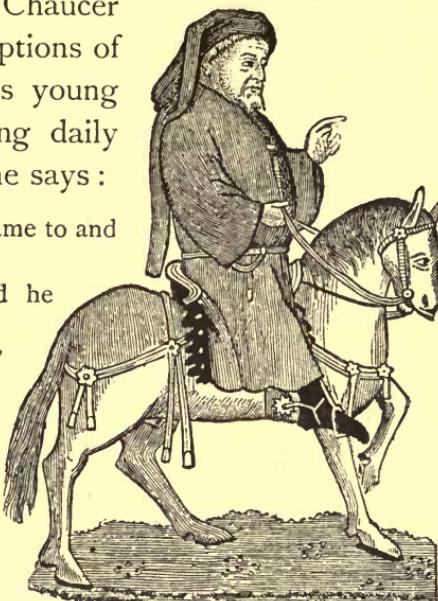
† A *cantabile*.

‡ Quavering.

So sweetly, that all the chamber rung,
 And *Angelus ad Virginem** he sung ;
 And after that he sung the kingès note :†
 Full often blessed was his merry throet.'

Not less happy is Chaucer in his serious descriptions of singing. Of a pious young Christian boy, passing daily through the Jewry, he says :

' This little child, as he came to and fro,
 Full merrily then would he sing and crie
O Alma Redemptoris! ever mo [more].
 The sweetness hath his hearte pierced so
 Of Christe's Mother, that to her to pray,
 He cannot stint of singing by the way.'



CHAUCER AS A CANTERBURY PILGRIM.

And he has a still more beautiful passage upon a holy woman singing devoutly :

' And while that the organs maden melody,
 To God alone thus in her heart sung she.'

Chaucer speaks of the muse, Polyhymnia, as

* The angels' salutation to the Virgin (Luke ii. 28), of which more anon.

† 'King's Note,' or Chant Royal, was an appellation given to poems on lofty subjects.

‘Singing with voice memorial in the shade,
Under the laurels, which that may not fade.’

Elsewhere he says :

‘And as I sat the birdes hearkening thus,
Methought that I heard voices suddenly,
The most sweetest and most delicious
That ever wight I trow truely
Hearden in their life ; for the harmony
And sweet accord was in so good music,
That the voices to angels most were like.’

Even the singing of the birds did not slip his attentive ear :

‘I was waked
With smallè fowlès a great heap,
That had affray’d me out of my sleep
Through noise and sweetness of their song ;
And as me met* they sat among
Upon my chamber roof without,
Upon the tiles o'er all about,
And ever each sungè in his wise
The most sweet and solemn service
By note that ever man I trow
Had heard, for some of them sang low,
Some high, and all of one accord ;
To tellen shortly, at one word.’

Poet-musician that he was, he heard and felt music in all around him :

‘There heard I playing on a harp
That ysounded both well and sharp,
Him Orpheus full craftily ;

* Dreamed.

And on this other side fast by
 Ysat the harper Orion,
 And Gacides Chirion,
 And other harpers many one,
 And the Briton Glaskirion,
 And smallè harpers with their glee,
 Sat under them in divers sees ;*
 And gone on them upward to gape,
 And counterfeited them as an ape,
 Or as Craft counterfeiteith Kind.'

The father of English poesy, in his own quaint fashion, has noted the wearisomeness of monotony in music—of playing perpetually the same thing :

' For though that the best harper upon live
 Would on the bestè sounded jolly harp
 That ever was, with all his fingers five
 Touch aye one string, or aye one warble harp,
 Were his nailès pointed never so sharp,
 It shouldè maken every wight to dull
 To hear his glee, and of his strokès full.'

Chaucer has multiplied mentions of Minstrelsy :

' Before them stood such instruments of soun'
 That Orpheus, nor of Thebes, Amphioun,
 Ne maden never such a melody :
 At every course in came loud minstrelsy,
 That never Joab trumped for to hear,
 Nor he, Theodomas, yet half so clear
 At Thebes when the city was in doubt.'

' And before them went minstrels many one,
 As harpès, pipès, lutès, and psalt'ry,
 Allè in green ; and on their headès bare,
 Of divers flowerès made full craftily,

* Seats.

All in a suit, goodly chaplets they wear,
And so, dancing, into the mead they fare ;
In mid the which they found a tuft that was
All overspread with flowerès in compas,
Whereto they inclined every one
With great reverence, and that full humbly ;
And at the last there began anon
A lady for to sing right womanly
A bargaret* in praising the daisy ;
For (as methought) among her notès sweet
She said "Si douce est la Marguerite!"
Then they all answered her in fere,†
So passing well and so pleasantly,
That it was a most blissful noise to hear.'

Golden singer of a far-off age ! What need have we of further quotation from him to show either the artist mind of this fourteenth-century lyrist, or to prove the wide reach of the harmonious art and its general acceptance and appreciation by all ranks of Englishmen in an age when this country, if we judge wholly from the estimate of foreign historians, was supposed to be without a shred of musical worth or status ?

Chaucer's evidence is invaluable for this epoch, furnishing as it does so much information upon the internal musical life of the country. His references to the instruments and musical methods are all thoroughly English, not the borrowed colourings of other countries' art. From them we learn that in the convents the nuns sang the service to musical

* A pastoral ditty.

† Together.

notes, and that the lute, the rote, the fiddle, the sautre, the bagpipe, the cittern, the ribible, the trumpet, the clarion, and the flute, were instruments in common use. Other instruments of the time were the shalm or shawm, the citole, the hautboy or wayte (from which comes the present-day term 'the waits'), the horn, shepherd's pipe, sackbut, dul-



THE HUNT IS UP.

(From bas-reliefs under seats of the choir in Ely Cathedral.)

cimer, etc. The organ, as we have seen, was introduced into the churches many centuries before the time of Chaucer. The terms 'treble,' 'counter-tenor,' 'tenor,' and 'bass,' which he uses, show us that four-part singing was common enough; besides which, that excellent habit of meeting together for mutual vocal harmony also prevailed. This was especially the case with the students at the Inns of Court, where, we are informed, besides studying jurisprudence, 'there they learnt to sing

and to exercise themselves in all kinds of harmony.'*

It is on record, too, in the statutes of New College, Oxford, drawn up by the founder, William of Wykeham, in 1380, that the scholars shall 'amuse themselves by singing in the hall after dinner, on festival days'; and, doubtless, this greatly tended to the advancement of music, and specially of part-singing, at the University.

Dr. Burney, passing over the famous Round, 'Sumer is icumen in,' and ignorant, probably, of the Anglo-Saxon Latin hymn of the Annunciation, *Angelus ad Virginem*, states that 'no English music in parts is preserved so ancient as the time of Chaucer,'† yet leans to the opinion, by the manner in which Chaucer describes a concert of birds,‡ that full—that is, part—music-services in churches were common enough in Chaucer's time. Here is his authority :

'And everiche song in his wise
The most swete, and solempne servise
By note, that evir man I trowe
Had herde, for some of hem songe lowe,
Some highe, and all of one accord'e.'

Coupling such evidence as these MSS. supply with Chaucer's references, it is more than probable that the worthy, industrious Doctor was correct in

* *De Laudibus Legum Angliae*, cap. 49.

† 'History of Music,' vol. ii., p. 380.

‡ 'Dream of Chaucer,' v. 301.

surmising that vocal harmony was in vogue, at any rate, in the Church services in Chaucer's day. It is highly improbable that composers would write harmony—and such exists in two and three parts in the *Angelus ad Virginem*—if it was not intended to be sung, and since the construction of the organs would produce this, there is good ground for accepting the opinion of the famous historian on this point.

The reference which Chaucer* makes in his description of the poor Oxford scholar, Nicholas—who to soften the loneliness of his chamber turned betimes to music's consoling power—introduces us to a valuable piece of documentary musical evidence which appears to have long escaped the notice of the historian and antiquary. The lofty subject—which he sang so noticeably, and doubtless accompanied on the psaltery—the *Angelus ad Virginem*, was an Anglo-Saxon Latin hymn, setting out the story of the Annunciation of the Virgin Mary. It supplies one further link in the chain of English musical history—a much dislocated and disjointed record, towards the establishing of which each piece of indubitable proof becomes of priceless value. Wonderful to relate, too, it takes us



PERFORMER ON A PSALTERY OF THE FOURTEENTH CENTURY.

* ‘Canterbury Tales.’

back to the earliest days of England's school of composition—the First School Period of the thirteenth century, when 'Sumer is icumen in' was composed, and when this country indisputably owned creative musical talent of the highest order, although so little of it has survived by name or example. On this account, then, and because it supports what has been adduced respecting 'Sumer is icumen in'—with all its early ingenuity and learning—this composition will appeal to all lovers of ancient music, particularly the champions of the English school.

When the Oxford scholar, in his loneliness, sits beguiling the hours by chanting the *Angelus ad Virginem*, he is sounding a melody that was written more than a hundred years before—a tune which, like many an *Ave Maria*, had perhaps become familiar enough in the churches. The date of the MS. has been approximately fixed at 1250 to 1260, or within twenty years of the famous Northumbrian Round, or 'Reading Rota,' as it is called.

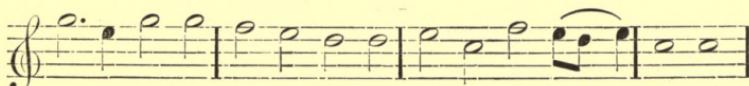
Sir John Hawkins makes no mention of this composition in his 'History of Music,' nor does Dr. Burney in his voluminous work, for the very good reason that they did not know of its existence. It was a treasure of the Norfolk family, one of the Howards presenting it, together with other valuable MSS., to the Royal Society, who a hundred years or so ago transferred it to the British Museum, where it was numbered 248 in the Arundel MSS. Collection.

There it attracted the attention of Mr. Henry Bradshaw, F.S.A., librarian of the University of Cambridge, and subsequently the Chaucer Society had the hymn photographed.

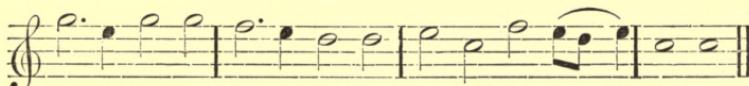
There are five stanzas in the Latin and five in the English version of the words appended to the MS. The following is a fair sample of the whole :

‘ Gabriel fram [h]evene[’s] king
sent to the maid[en] swete,
brou[gh]te hir blisful tiding
and faire he ’gan hir grete :
Heil be thu, ful of grace ari[gh]t !
for Godes sone this [h]evenè light
for mannes loven
wil man bicomen,
and taken fles[h] of the maiden bri[gh]t,
mank[ind] fre for to make
of sinne and devil’s mi[gh]t.’

The following gives the melody of the hymn, which, considering its antiquity, can scarcely be said to be crude, or to sound altogether foreign to modern ears. On the contrary, there is, here and there, a particular home flavour about the tune—one recalling the true Church spirit and character so strongly present in the Elizabethan age composers :



An - ge - lus ad Vir - gi-nem, Sub - in-trans in con - cla - ve,



Vir - gi - nis for - mi - di-nem De - mul - cens in - quit..... A - ve.

Ave, Regina vir-gi-num, Cœ-li-ter -
 rae - que Do-mi - num Con-ci-pi - es, et pa-ri - es in -
 tac - ta Sa - lu - tem, ho - mi - num, tu por - ta
 cœ - li fac - ta, Me - de - la cri - mi - num.

It remains to be added that the music is written in timeless notes, but so exactly over the words that there is no difficulty in barring the notes by the metre of the verse. This was the course universally adopted before music had notes of definite duration in proportion to others. One peculiarity of the writing should be noted—that where the accent falls upon a long vowel, two notes are placed close together, as if the singer were to iterate the note.

The book containing this piece has also three Latin motets and a beautiful English hymn, 'Quen of euene for ye blisse' (Queen of Heaven for the Bliss). The MSS. are in the thirteenth-century handwriting, beautifully penned. This volume and the Reading book are the sole records remaining to us of the existence of the First English School of Music that flourished about 1200-1250.

Chaucer is not, however, the only author-witness to musical names and customs of the day. Adam Davy of Stratford-by-London, who flourished *circa* 1312, writes :

‘Mery it is in halle to here the harpè,
The mynstrall syng, the jogelour carpe.’

Another author, Langland (*circa* 1300-1370), the reputed author of the ‘Vision of Pieres Plowman,’ reproaches himself for not being better qualified in the art, thus showing that it was still somewhat of a disgrace not to be musically educated and disposed in these early days :

‘Ich can nat tabre, ne trompe, ne telle faire gestes,
Ne fithelyn, at festes, ne harpen ;
Japen ne jagelyr, ne gentilleche pipe ;
Nother sailen, ne sautrien, ne singe with the giterne.’

Yet there was music in the soul of Longland, or he could not have written such alliterative, descriptive verse as that quoted.

During the fourteenth century all the rhymes and narratory poems were still sung to the accompaniment of the harp. The habit of reciting ballads or historical poems even crept into the public ceremonies. Bishop Adam de Orleton, on visiting the Priory church of St. Swithin, Winchester, was forced to listen to a Danish giant story, and a trial by fire narrative, accompanied on the harp by one Herbert, as a part of the festivities of the occasion.

But to return to reasoning musical art. John

Dunstable* (i.e., John born at Dunstable) is a notable name in Early English musical annals.

With him we meet the founder of the **Dunstable.** Second School of English Music. 'The father of English contrapuntists,' as he has been called, was born about the year 1400, and died in 1458. Both a composer and writer, his chief work was the '*De Mensurabiles Musica*,' which Thomas Ravenscroft, Mus. Bac., and other writers of the succeeding century, quoted and referred to as a standard work on music. This tract is, however, lost. Until quite recently the examples extant of Dunstable's music were the quotations made by Gafforius and Morley. A specimen of his work, a three-part song, *O Rosa Bella*, is to be found in MS. at the Vatican Library, and the British Museum possesses two examples from his pen. One is an enigma,† filling up a page (folio 18), and signed, 'Qd Dunstable.' The other is a three-part composition in a volume which once belonged to Henry VIII.‡ Four of this master's compositions are also to be found in the Liceo Filarmonico di Bologno Collection.

Dunstable was not only a musician, but a mathematician and eminent astronomer, while a tract in the Bodleian Library proves him to have been also

* Also named Dunstable, 'John of Dunstable,' and erroneously confounded by Marpurg and other writers with St. Dunstan.

† Treatises on Music, Add. MSS. 10,336.

‡ Add. MSS. 31,922.

an authority upon geography. He was buried in the Church of St. Stephen, Walbrook, London, in 1458. The following epitaph, written by John of Whethamstede, Abbot of St. Albans, and placed on record by Weaver, is one of two which have long preserved the fame of this musician :

‘ Musicus hic Michalus alter ; novus et Ptholomeus,
 Junior ac Atlas supportans robore cælos,
 Pausat sub cinere ; melior vir de muliere
 Nunquām natus erat ; vicii quia labe carebat :
 Et virtutibus opes possedit vincus omnes.
 Cur exoptetur, sic optandoque precetur
 Perpetuis annis celebretur fama Johannis
 Dunstapil ; in pace requiescat, et hic sine fine.’*

The other, Stowe says, was inscribed on ‘two faire plated stones in the Chancelle, each by other.’ It runs :

‘ Claudit hoc tumulo, qui Cœlum pectore clausit
 Dunstable I., juris, astrorum conscius illo
 Judice novit hiramis abscondite pandere coeli
 Hic vir erat tua laus, tua lux, tua musica princeps
 Quique tuas dulces per mundum sparserat onus,
 Anno Mil. Equater, semel L trias jungito Christi.
 Pridie natale sidus transmigrat ad astra
 Suscipiant proprium civem cœli sibi cives.’

All trace of Dunstable’s tomb disappeared with the Great Fire of London.

Kiesewetter, in his history,† makes no mention of Dunstable when treating the Dufay epoch (1380-

* ‘Funeral Monuments’ (Weaver), 1631 edition, p. 577.

† ‘History of the Modern Music of Western Europe.’

1450) of musical art ; but it must not be forgotten that while this first or ancient Netherlands school was growing up, forming and cementing the principles of contrapuntal art, England was, both before and contemporaneously, helping in the work. If there was a Dufay, a Binchois, and an Ockenheim improving counterpoint, and otherwise raising the low state of theoretical music, there was also a Dunstable—an Englishman occupied with quite as valuable labours in the department of mensural and figural music. The credit of this has not been given to England by historians generally ; but, happily, we have not only Dunstable's writings, but also the evidence of a contemporary musician, to prove this.

The reader will know that early in the fifteenth century the Abbé Baini, of the Pontifical Chapel, sent to Belgium for some Netherlands musicians to perform at Rome a Mass written in their particular style. Among these musicians was Johannes Tinctoris (1434-1520), who became a celebrated teacher in Italy, and it was he who bore testimony to Dunstable's labours at the renaissance, or revival, of learning period in the following terms : 'Cujus, ut ita dicam, novæ artis fons et origo apud Anglicos, quorum caput Dunstable exstitit, fuisse exhibetur, et huic contemporanei fuerunt in Galliâ Dufai et Binchois.' (The source and origin of this new [form of musical] art, if I may so speak, is to be found among the English, of whom the chief musician was Dun-

stable, with whom Dufay and Binchois were contemporaries in France.)*

Dunstable could not have *invented* counterpoint however, inasmuch as several works upon it were written before he was born.

Many writers, Gafforius, Morley, and Ravenscroft, among other of Dunstable's immediate successors, quote from his writings, and make reference to his compositions, so that he must have been highly regarded both as a theoretical writer and composer. He rendered valuable services to theoretical art in ridding it of the obnoxious successions of fifths, perfect and imperfect, and octaves, with which all early music abounded ; in simplifying the voice parts, and in encouraging a steadier and more effective flow of the music generally.

Morley later on charged Dunstable with the great offence in the composer's art of separating the syllables of the same word by rests, but Burney easily refutes this. He is of opinion that Morley was so eager to make a pun on the name of Duns-table that he did not sufficiently consider the passages which he censured. Nothing can now shake the deserved reputation of Dunstable. There is no doubt that he was a distinguished Englishman at the head of a Second Period in that school of music in England which preceded the Netherlanders and Burgundians. The most recent Dunstable researches have

* *Proportionale (Tinctoris).*

been made by Mr. Barclay Squire, of the British Museum, who has lately discovered a large collection of Dunstable MSS. in the Modena Library. Here, in what was the library of Hercules II., Duke of Modena in 1471, have been found no less than thirty-one motets by Dunstable and seventeen by other English composers, copies of all of which have been made by Mr. Squire and deposited at the British Museum.

Another Dunstable discovery was made somewhat earlier than this. By a lucky accident Dr. Haberl, of Ratisbon, came across these Dunstable MSS. when searching for materials for his Dufay biography. In the capitular archives of Trent, in Austrian Tyrol, he found six large volumes of fifteenth-century music—a complete anthology of the best music of the day. No sooner was this known than Mr. Squire went to Trent (1889), and copied fourteen motets and a French chanson of undoubted Dunstable music. The Austrian Government placed an embargo on the copies, urging that their publication would diminish the pecuniary value of the originals, a restriction which it is hoped will some day be removed. This was the music that constituted the 'new art' which, a contemporary authority declared, originated in England. No wonder that Dunstable's name became one of more than local celebrity.

Following upon Dunstable was John Ham-

boys,* whose exact birth and death dates are unrecorded, although Holinshed refers to him as flourishing in the reign of Edward IV. (1461-1483). Other authors—Pits and Bale—fix him under the year 1470, which, however, would be towards the end of his life.

He is generally believed to have been the first English musician on whom the degree of Doctor of Music was conferred—1463. This point it will always be difficult to determine, however, inasmuch as that at this time there also lived Thomas Saintwix—born about the year 1430. He was a Doctor of Music of Cambridge, and was appointed Provost of King's College in that University, a record which, being quite in order, gives some weight to his right to be considered the first English 'Mus. Doc.'

Possibly Hamboys may have graduated at Oxford—this does not appear—when it would have been possible for him to take precedence of Saintwix in the possession of this coveted academical degree. The names of no Oxford musical graduates are recorded before the sixteenth century, which is strange indeed, if such degrees were conferred; but Holinshed, in enumerating the most eminent men of learning in the reign of Edward IV., includes 'John Hamboys—an excellent musician, who, for his notable cunning therein, was made a Doctor of Music.'†

*—Spelt also Hambois and Hanboys.

† 'Chronicle,' vol. ii., p. 1355.

Whether he was musician enough to compose a song in six or eight parts and publicly perform the same 'tam Vocibus quam Instrumentis etiam Musicis'—the qualifying test in Dr. Burney's day—or whether he passed *honoris causâ*, is not known; but it is certain that he was the author of two tracts in Latin: 'Summum Artis Musices' and 'Cantionum Artificialium diversi Generis.*

Abyngdon† (Henry) belongs also to this famous period in our national musical history. He was an English ecclesiastic and musician who **Abyngdon.** became Sub-Cantor of Wells Cathedral, on November 24, 1447, which post he filled until his death, September 1, 1497.

In 1465 Abyngdon was appointed 'Master of the Song' at the Chapel Royal, London, which he held conjointly with the Succentorship of Wells, from which we may conclude that his services as a musician were much appreciated. This latter appointment brought him in an annual salary of forty marks—a sufficiently weighty matter to occupy the attention of Parliament in those days (1473-74). In the year 1478 the Mastership of St. Catharine's Hospital, Bristol, became vacant, and Abyngdon

* The exact period at which the distinction of 'Doctor of Music' was instituted in England is a debated point. One authority, Wood, in his 'History of Oxford,' says that the 'Mus. Doc.' degree was first conferred by Henry II. Spelman believes it to belong to the reign of King John, *circa* 1207.

† Spelt also Abingdon, Habengton, and Habingdon.

was elected thereto, thus adding another to his plurality of appointments. His duties at this latter institution have not transpired, but doubtless they were of a similar nature to those occupying the attention of the Foundling Hospital organist to-day.

Nothing is known of the works of this musician, but he is believed to have composed Church rather than secular music. He is credited with being the first musician admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Music at Cambridge. This was in 1463, when Abyngdon's name is traced as proceeding to that faculty. From the fact that so little is known of his compositions, it is possible that he gave but sparse time to composition; indeed, his widely separated duties, unless exceptionally light, would have precluded much writing. But there is another explanation. Abyngdon's *forte* was singing and organ-playing:

‘ Millibus in mille cantor fuit optimus ille,
Præter et hæc ista fuit optimus orgaquerista ;’

so that we may conclude that he occupied his time largely with these branches of music.

Abyngdon shared the goodwill of Sir Thomas More, who, as a young man, knew the musician. The association does honour to both, and shows that Abyngdon must have had points as a man as well as a musician, especially as the Prelate styled him ‘nobilis.’*

* ‘Life of More’ (Cayley), vol. i., p. 317.

Sir Thomas More wrote two epitaphs on Abyngdon. Hamboys, Saintwix and Abyngdon represent the Third Period English School, the archives of which are unfortunately lost.

Hothby* (John), whose precise birth and death dates are unknown, although it is conjectured that he died at Florence in 1500, was another fifteenth-century musician, whom it has been attempted by some to locate a century earlier.

An English Carmelite monk, he long lived in a monastery at Ferrara, but settled eventually at Florence *circa* 1440. There is no doubt that he was a clever scientific musician, who, in search of information concerning his art, left England to travel in Italy, France, Germany and Spain, in the monasteries of which countries many scarce musical manuscripts were to be seen.

Hothby would seem to have been indebted to Muris for some of his erudition, for in a manuscript copy of a work by that learned and earlier theorist the copyist attests to having transcribed it for Hothby, adding the date 1471, and eulogizing Hothby. This, by the way, is ample proof that Hothby was no fourteenth-century worker.

He wrote several treatises on music, two of which Coussemaker has published in his collection of writings on music of the Middle Ages.†

* Also written Ottebi, Otteby, and Hothbus.

† 'Scriptorum de Musica Medii Ævi,' iii. 328.

Hothby's chief work was on the 'Proportions of Music,' and copies of treatises on this subject are to be found in the British Museum and in the libraries of Paris, Bologna, and Ferrara. The latest researches warn us, however, that the treatise beginning 'Quid est Proportio,' dated 1500, of which there are copies at the British Museum and Lambeth Palace, is not identical with the 'Regulæ super Proportionem' of the foreign libraries. In the Florence Library is a Hothby MS., which, besides being a quotation from Dunstable, contains an interesting account of musical notation and the transition from neumes to square note characters.

It has not transpired whether Hothby was an executive musician besides being a composer; but there is little doubt that all these early theorists whose names have come down to us as composers only, were also organists, and in some cases singers in the royal chapels. The Paris MS. styles Hothby a Doctor of Music, but his name cannot be traced among the musical graduates of either Oxford or Cambridge.

To maintain as far as possible a chronological order at this disturbed period, we have next to speak of Robert Wydewe, who was sub-cantor of Wells Cathedral in 1447. In this same year **Wydewe.** John Bernard was Cantor of Wells, but unfortunately little more is known of him. Wydow*

* Spelt also Wedow, Widows, Wydewe, and Viduus.

flourished in the reign of Edward IV. (1461-1483). The son of an Essex schoolmaster, he was sent to Oxford, where he took the Bachelor of Music degree. He also took holy orders, and was appointed Vicar of Thaxted in 1481. He held successively the appointment of 'Penitentarius' in St. Paul's Cathedral; Rector of Chalfont St. Giles; Canon and Succentor of Wells; deputy between the Pope and the Chapter of Wells; and finally Vicar of Buckland Newton. Among the poets of his day he was *facile princeps*, but no musical composition of his has survived his fame. He died October 4, 1505.

Henry V. (1413-1432) was a monarch who would seem to have entertained peculiar notions respecting music, although we do not find that he used any

Henry V. severity in inter-
and Music. dicting its use in
any way. At his coronation in Westminster Hall in 1413, for instance, we hear of no other instruments than harps being used, although numerous other instruments were in every-day use. Of harps in the hall, however, there was a prodigious number, if we are to believe one of his historians. 'The number of harpers,' we are told, 'was exceedingly



HENRY V.

great, and,' goes on the narrator, 'the sweet strings of their harps soothed the souls of the guests by their soft melody.' Possibly the Prince had an aversion to noisy music, preferring what some people to-day describe as 'soft' music. If so, we can but admire his taste, for nothing perhaps in the range of music is more disturbing than that blasting and blowing of trumpets which has to be endured upon important public occasions, even when these are enacted indoors nowadays, when a sweep of harp music would be infinitely more affecting and less barbarous. Why the high personages mostly concerned in these functions, and whose minds are expected to be centred on what is going on, do not move for an abatement of this fanfare nuisance passes our comprehension. That music was much in vogue among the soldiers of those days—probably more than it is now—has come down to us as a historical fact. The night before the battle of Agincourt the English camp resounded with national songs and music.

Public expressions of applause were particularly distasteful to this King, who was more disgusted than gratified with praise for his valiant deeds.



JONGLEUR PLAYING A VIELLE
(FIFTEENTH CENTURY).

(*From a MS. in the Arsenal Library at Paris.*)

When he entered the City of London after the battle of Agincourt, the gates and streets were hung with tapestry, representing the history of ancient heroes ; and children were placed at temporary turrets to sing verses. Such arrangements, however, were of little avail. Henry, by a formal edict, forbade his subjects for the future to extol this Agincourt victory, 'for that he woulde have the wholle praise and thanks given to God.' In spite of edicts, however, one song got so firm a hold upon the people, either before or after the order, that it has been kept to this day. It is preserved in the Pepysian Collection at Cambridge. This copy is written upon vellum in Gregorian notes, and Dr. Burney was of opinion that it was 'little less ancient than the event which it recorded.* Appended is a copy of this remarkable song, which is not less notable as a venerable historic relic than it is as a sample of native musical composition :

AGINCOURT VICTORY SONG (1415).

The musical notation consists of two staves, each with a key signature of C major (one circle) and a time signature of common time (a vertical line). The first staff begins with a quarter note, followed by a half note, another half note, and a quarter note. The second staff begins with a half note, followed by a quarter note, a half note, and a quarter note. Below the first staff, the lyrics are: 'De - o gra - ti - as An - gli - - -'. Below the second staff, the lyrics are: 'a red - de pro vic - - to - ri - a.'

* 'History of Music,' vol. ii., p. 384.



Owre Kynge went forth to Nor - man-dy, With



grace and myght of Chy - val - ry; The God for



hym wrought marv - 'lus - ly, Where-fore Englonde may



calle, and cry: De - o - - - gra - - ti - as.

CHORUS.

De - o gra - ti - as An - - gli - a.....

De - o gra - ti - as An - - gli - a red -

De - o gra - ti - as An - - gli - a

..... red - de pro vic - to - ri - a.

de pro vic - to - ri - a.

red - de pro vic - to - - - - ri - a.

The remainder of the narrative runs as follows :

' He sette a sege, the sothe to say,
 To Harflue town, with royal array,
 That toune he wan, and made a fray,
 That Fraunce shall rywe tyl domes-day.
 Deo gratias, etc.

'Than for sothe that knyght comely,
In Agincourt feld faught manly,
Thorow grace of God most myghty,
He had bothe felde, and victory.

Deo gratias, etc.

'Then went owre kynge, with all his oste,
Throwe Fraunce for all the Frensshe boste ;
He spared for drede of leste, ne most
Till he come to Agincourt coste.

Deo gratias, etc.

'There dukys, and earlys, lorde and baron
Were take, and slayne, and that wel sone,
And some were ledde into Lundone
With joye, and merthe, and grete renone.

Deo gratias, etc.

'Now gracious God he save owre kynge,
His people, and all his well wyllinge ;
Gef him gode lyfe, and gode endynge,
That we with merth may safely syngē

Deo gratias Anglia redde pro victoria.'

We are indebted to Dr. Burney and his contemporary, John Stafford Smith—whose 'Musica Antiqua' collection renders him an authority upon ancient vocal music—for deciphering and disentangling the notation, etc., of this song. From the marked 'churchy' character of the music, and the fact that it is written in the Dorian, or first authentic mode, it would seem to have been composed by an ecclesiastic whose name has not come down to us. The thoughtful *Deo Gratias* somewhat confirms this view. At the same time, all the music of this period is steeped with a religious flavour—especially the

scientific music—as if it was mainly the work of monks, or others, brought much into contact with ecclesiastical life and influence. The melody of this ‘Agincourt’ song is fairly regular and agreeable to the ear, but it well illustrates the fluctuating character of the composer’s art in England in being far inferior to ‘Sumer is icumen in,’ both in melody and harmony, as well as in secular, local colour.

Henry V. was not wholly opposed to music, for when preparing for his eventful journey to France in 1415, an express order was given for his minstrels to attend him. Again, at the Feast of Pentecost in 1416, when he entertained the Emperor and the Duke of Holland, he ordered rich gowns for sixteen of his minstrels. At his death his son (Henry VI.)

paid out of the Royal Exchequer a grant of one hundred shillings to each of the late King’s minstrels, an annuity which the late King ordered orally just before his death, but was not able to endorse.

Little is heard of music in England during Henry VI.’s reign

(1422-1461). It has been gleaned from records, however, that for the year 1430, and for some time



HENRY VI.

both before and after, the minstrels were better paid than the clergy. In the reign of Henry VI. it was the custom to hold an annual feast of the fraternity of the Holy Cross. This took place at Abingdon, in Berkshire, and the disbursements show that while twelve priests each received 4d. for singing a dirge, the minstrels, of whom there were twelve, each received 2s. 4d., in addition to food for himself and fodder for his horse. Nor was this extra payment because they travelled far, since most of them hailed from the neighbouring town of Maidenhead.

That this King enjoyed and supported music, however, is clear, inasmuch as several of the musicians whom he paid for their solace and amusement went over, at his death, to the service of Edward IV.

The next reign was an auspicious one for music. Edward IV. (1461-1483) was minded to advance the art, and amid many demands which the continuation

Chapels Royal Founded. of civil war made upon him, he found time and attention to accomplish not a

little in the cause of music. Edward's name, indeed, deserves to be honourably remembered for what he did for the art at a particularly troubled period, especially as some of our most cherished musical institutions of to-day owe their origin to this King. Edward built the Chapel Royal at Windsor, and from his desire to

have suitable musical services thereat came the foundation of those establishments—the Chapels



EDWARD IV.

Royal—with which so many of the foremost native musicians of to-day are, or have been, actively associated. In a work* containing an account of the household establishment of Edward IV., we meet with data which furnish us with the origin of the institutions—the Chapel Royal

choir and the Royal Band—the King's or Queen's, as the case may be.

The particulars detailed concern the several musicians retained in the King's employment for his private amusement as well as for the carrying

**King's
Court
Musicians.** out of the chapel services. Thus there were: 'Minstrelles thirteene, whereof one is Virger, which directeth them all festyvall dayes in their statyones of blowings and pypyngs to such offyces as the offyceres might be warned to prepare for the King's meats and soupers; to be more redyere in all services and due tyme; and all these sytting in the hall together, whereof some be trumpets, some with the shalmes

* 'Liber Niger Domus Regis.'

and smalle pypes, and some are strange mene coming to this Court at fyve feastes of the year, and then take their wages of Household, after $iiijsd.$ ob. by daye, after as they have byne presente in Courte, and then to avoyd after the next morrowe aftere the feaste, besydes theire other rewards yearly in the King's Exchequer, and clothinge with the Household, wintere and somere for eiche of them $xxs.$ And they take nightelye amongeste them all $iiijs$ galanes ale ; and for wintere Seasone thre candles waxe, vj candles pich, $iiijs$ tale sheids (billes of firewood) ; lodging suffytyente by the Herbengere for them and theire horses nighteley to the Courte. Aulso hauing into Courte ij servants to bear their trumpets, pypes, and other instruments, and



MINSTRELS OF THE FIFTEENTH
CENTURY.

torche for wintere nightes, whilst they blow to suppre of the chaundry ; and alway two of thes persones to contynewe styll in Courte at wages by the cheque rolle whiles they be presente $iiij$ ob. dayly, to warne the King's ridynge household when he goeth to horsbacke as oft as it shall require, and that his household meny may followe the more redyere aftere by the blowinge of their trumpets. Yf any of thes two Minstrelles be lete bloode in Courte, he taketh two loves, ij messe of greate meate, one galone ale. They part not at no tyme with the rewards given to the Household. Also when it please the King to have ij Minstrelles continuinge at Courte, they will not in no wise that thes Minstrelles be so famylliere to aske rewards.'

Another entry runs : 'A Wayte that nightelye from Mychelmas to Shreve Thorsdaye pipethe watche withen this Courte fower tymes ; in the somere nightes ij tymes, and makethe Bon Gayte (good watch) at every chambere doare and offyce, as well for feare of pyckeres and pillers. He eateth in the halle with mynstrielles, and takethe yverey nighte a loffe, a galone of alle, and for somere nightes ij candles pich, a bushel of coles ; and for wintere nights halfe a loafe of bread, a gallon of ale, $iiij$ candles piche, a bushel coles ; daylye whilste he is presente in Courte for his wages in cheque roale allowed $iiijd.$ ob. or else $iijd.$ by the discretion of the steuarde and tressorere, and that, aftere his cominge

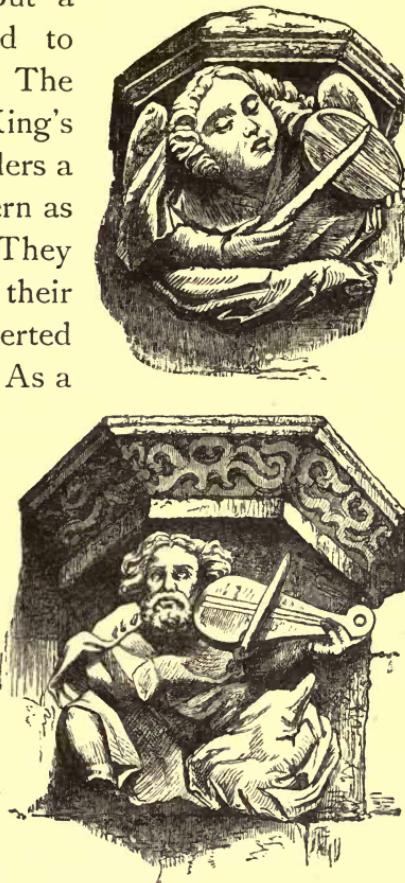
and diserninge : also cloathinge with the housshold yeoman or mynstrelles lyke to the wages that he takethe ; and he be syke he takyth twoe loves, ij messe of greate meate, one gallon ale. Also he partethe with the housholde of general gyfts, and hathe his beddinge carried by the comptroller's assygment ; and under this yeoman to be a groome watere. Yf he can excuse the yeoman in his absence, then he takethe rewarde, clotheinge, meat and all other things lyke to other Grooms of Houshold. Also this Yeoman-Waigthe, at the making of Knightes of the Bathe, for his attendance upon them by nighte-tyme, in watchinge in the chappelle, hathe to his fee all the watchinge-clothing that the knight shall weare uppon him.'

The next entry concerns the 'Cildren of the Chapelle.' Of these there were 'vijj founded by the King's priuie cofferes for all that longeth to their apperelle by the hands and oversyghte of the Deane, or by the Master of Songe assigned to teache them, which Mastere is appointed by the Deane, chosen one of the nomber of the fellowshipe of chappelle after rehearsed, and to drawe them to other schooles after the form of Gacotte, as well as in Songe in Organies and other. Thes Children eate in the Hall dayly at the Chappele board, nexte the Yeomane of Uestery: taking amongst them for lyverye daylye for brekefaste and all nighte, two loves, one messe of greate meate, ij galones ale ;

and for wintere seassone iiiij candles piche, iij talfheids, and lyttere for their pallets of the Serjante-Usher and carryadge of the King's coste for the competente beddynge by the oversyghte of the Comptrollere. And amongeste them all to have one servante into the court to trusse and bear their harnesse and lyverye in Court. And that day the King's Chappelle remoueth every of thes children then present receauth *iiijd.* at the Grene Clothe of the Comptyng-house for horshire dayly, as long as they be jurneinge. And when any of these children comene to xvij years of age, and their uoyces change, ne cannot be preferred in this Chapelle, the nombere being full, then yf they will assente the King assynethe them to a College of Oxeford or Cambridge of his foundatione, there to be at fyndyng and studye bothe suffytyently, tylle the King may otherwise aduance them.'

Thus if Edward IV. somewhat curtailed the liberty and audacity of the wandering minstrel he accomplished a greater work in establishing musical institutions which have survived to this day, and which we hope, and believe, will remain for many a long year to come. The royal chapels and the private bands of the Sovereign have ever since provided lucrative and coveted posts for a proportion of our best native talent, and when all other musical machinery has stopped and disappeared, these establishments—and occasionally others like them

in wealthy private families—have been the means of preserving and keeping together the musical tradition and practice. But a greater value attached to Edward IV.'s action. The appointments in the King's service gave their holders a leisure free from concern as to 'ways and means.' They had time to think, and their thoughts naturally reverted to their beautiful art. As a consequence, these musicians took to writing music—music that was adapted to, and would meet with performance at, the chapel services. One vied with another in producing a beautiful anthem, motet, or *Ave* setting. Such was the genesis of that great glorious school of English Church composers which has made the Elizabethan era for ever famous in the annals of music. The matter emanated entirely from among ourselves, and it is a wilful perversion of the facts to



MINSTRELS OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

attribute the movement to any other—particularly any foreign—source or influence.

In a previous chapter we left the minstrels fast declining. A few more remarks need to be made respecting them before they disappear wholly, as an accepted element, from the story of English musical history.

Edward IV. (1461-1483) was the last monarch who recognized the minstrels. In 1469 he granted a Royal charter, dated April 24, to Walter Halliday,

Edward IV. and seven others, whose duty it was to appoint officers from among themselves and **Minstrelsy.** and to control and regulate the minstrel profession. Halliday became 'Marshal,' and Carlile 'Serjeant,' and the latter it was who, as the King lay one day on his bed, came to him in great haste, and 'badde hym aryse, for he hadde enemyes cumming for to take him, the which were within six or seven miles.'

Edward paid his musicians as a King should—right royally—and depended upon them not a little for assistance upon occasions of importance, whether in the Church or outside it. Thus when Elizabeth, his Queen, went to Westminster Abbey to be churched (1466), she was preceded by processions of choristers, chanting hymns, and to these succeeded long lines of the noblest and fairest women of London, attended by bands of musicians and trumpeters, and forty-two royal singers. Truly a

reasonable, impressive pageantry—one which might, to some extent at least, be imitated nowadays, for surely the music from such a procession of Church musicians would be in every sense more appropriate upon many of our state occasions than is the nerve-tearing military music which so wholly and entirely obtains upon such opportunities to-day.

Every private family of note had its own musical staff in Edward IV.'s reign—those who could not afford a band of performers contenting themselves

Private Families' Musicians. with a harper only. An Abbot or Bishop —upon the score of expense, or, perhaps, scruples of conscience—was sometimes reduced to this extreme. The household book of the Howard family abounds in entries relating to music and musicians. We find a payment of a 'new year's gift' to Lady Howard's grandmother's harper 'that dwellyth in Chestre.' Singers' names—Nicholas Stapylton, William Lyndsey, and 'little Richard'—appear, besides entries referring to four, five, and six 'children of the chapel,' thus showing that private chapels were maintained upon a large scale even thus early.

From an item set down to 'Thomas, the harperd' for a 'lyard,' or gray 'gown,' it is clear that patrons robed their musicians in those days. Lord Howard did not scour the country for his musicians, but adopted the sensible plan of having promising young talent trained for the post of family musician.

Thus we find from an agreement that was made, the 14th day of October, 1481, that one William Wastell, harper of London, was engaged so that he should teach the son of John Colet, of Colchester, harper, for a year, in order probably to render him competent afterwards to fill the post of one of the house musicians. A 'gown' was to be presented to Wastell at the end of the year.

On the whole Wastell's appearance was picturesque enough. This 'squire minstrel of Middlesex, who travelled the country in the summer seasons unto worshipful men's houses,' had a long gown of Kendal green, gathered at the neck with a narrow gorget, and fastened before with a white clasp. The long sleeves falling down to mid-leg were slit from the shoulders to the hand, and lined with white. His harp hung 'in good grace dependent before him,' and his 'wrest,' or tuning-key, was tied to 'green lace hanging by.' He wore a red Cadiz girdle, and the corner of his handkerchief, edged with blue lace, hung from his bosom. Under the gorget of his gown hung a chain, 'resplendent upon his breast, of the ancient arms of Islington.'

Unfortunately for Wastell and his art, such fine appearances and considerate patrons had to give way before a more prosaic state of things—those inevitable changes and improvements which were to lead up to the machinery of music as a nineteenth-century business and profession. The vast musical

life and work of to-day had to be opened up, and before this could be accomplished there were many processes, and many prejudices, which had to be broken through.

The short reign of Edward V.—whose unhappy fate with his brother Richard, Duke of York, is one of the most pathetic pictures in our national history—furnishes little further musical clue. With Richard III. (1483-1485), however, we meet with a monarch who was well disposed towards music and its professors. His chief aim was to maintain the excellence of the Chapel Royal choir which his brother had inaugurated. To this end he empowered John Melynek, one of the gentlemen of the chapel, 'to take and seize for the King all such singing men, expert in the science of music, as he could find and think able to do the King's service, within all places of the realm, as well cathedral churches, colleges, chapels, houses of religion, and all other franchised or exempt places, or elsewhere.' Children were not excluded from this order, which was, indeed, an illustration of the robbing of Peter to pay Paul !



RICHARD III.

One of the last of the minstrels was Richard Sheale (*circa* 1548), who preserved 'Chevy Chase' for us, and who had the misfortune to be robbed on Dunsmore Heath. His loss **The Last of the Minstrels.** was £60, an occurrence which he describes sorrowfully :

'After my robbery my memory was so decay'd
That I could neither sing, nor talk, my wits were so dismay'd.

'Some said I was not robb'd, I was but a lying knave,
It was not possible for a minstrel so much money to have.

'Because my carriage should be light I put my money into gold,
And without company I rode alone—thus was I foolish bold ;
I thought by reason of my harp no man would me suspect,
For minstrels oft with money, they be not much infect.'

A salutary measure passed in the thirty-ninth year of Queen Elizabeth's reign put an end to the minstrels for ever. 'Minstrels wandering abroad were rogues, vagabonds, and sturdy beggars,' and were to be punished as such. The result of this was that there were no more orders of minstrels. They descended to street musicians, and roamed about singly, or in twos and threes very much in the same way as itinerant musicians do now.

When the minstrels died out, Dr. Bull wrote the following lines, which might truly be called the 'Minstrels' Epitaph,' for minstrels never rose again to any importance in this country : **Bull's Minstrels' Epitaph.**

'When Jesus went to Jairus' house
(Whose daughter was about to die),
He turned the minstrels out of doors,
Among the rascal company :
Beggars they are with one consent,
And rogues, by Act of Parliament.'

It is a universal law that when one element disappears it is but to make room for another. Thus, when minstrelsy declined in England, its place was



THE MUSICIANS.

(*Carvings representing the humours of a popular festival (a Whitsun Ale) on the entablature under the parapet of the nave of St. John's Church, Cirencester. Nave rebuilt in 1504.*)

soon filled by a substitute which the people made for themselves. Minstrelsy—the true minstrelsy which for so many years had stood in place of any better art—declined appreciably before the Reformation.

Caxton's great labours affected it as they affected all else in England. 'The invention of printing,' remarks Mr. Chappell, 'coupled with the increased cultivation of poetry and music by men of genius and learning, accelerated the downfall of the minstrels. They could not long withstand the superior standard of excellence in the sister arts, on the one hand, and the competition of the ballad-singer (who sang without asking remuneration, and sold his songs for a penny), on the other. In little more than fifty years from this time they seem to have fallen into utter contempt.*

Secular music was greatly in advance of that of the Church in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, but although such was the case very little secular music has been handed down. There was nothing to prevent the free and unembarrassed development of secular music. The people liked it, and there were plenty of wandering musicians—gifted enough although unscientific—ready to make music for the people. Folk-songs, refrains, roundelay, love-ditties, ballads, and serenades—all this was a perfectly natural music-growth which filled the air with its perfume. The people, and wandering musicians between them, made the secular music, leaving that less natural art—sacred music—in the hands of the trained theorists, and rigid musical purists of the monastery and cloister.

The last important secular composition referred to

* 'Popular Music of the Olden Time' (Chappell).

was that First Period School composition 'Sumer is icumen in.' Secular music did not begin and end with this example. Confining ourselves to early songs with music—songs without music are frequent enough—there is one of the thirteenth century, with music in two parts, to the words :

'Foweles in the frith, the fisses in the flod.'

This MS. is preserved in the Bodleian Library.

Another very early English song, with music, is the 'Song of a Prisoner,' to be found in the *Liber de Antiquis Legibus* in the London Guildhall archives.

In proof that secular music was considerably in advance of that of the Church in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, we quote a specimen printed in John Stafford Smith's 'Musica Antiqua,' of an old English dance tune, taken from an ancient manuscript now in the Bodleian Library. Its notation is of the same period as that of the Reading *Rota*—a First Period School composition—'Sumer is icumen in,' i.e., about 1250. The bass is a modern addition :



ENGLISH CROWD.

(From a bas-relief on the under part of the seats in Worcester Cathedral choir. Date, twelfth or thirteenth century.)



Of the original of this tune and MS. Dr. Crotch observes : 'The abundance of appoggiaturas in so ancient a melody, and the number of bars in the phrases, four in one and five in another, nine in each part, are its most striking peculiarities. It is formed on an excellent design, similar to that of several fine airs of different nations. It consists of three parts, resembling each other excepting in the commencement of their phrases, in which they tower above each other with increasing energy, and is altogether a curious and very favourable specimen of the state of music at this very early period.'

'It is also a fact worthy of remark,' writes Sir F. A. Gore Ouseley, 'that this piece, like "Sumer is icumen in," is in the key of F major, and not in any of the Church modes, and is in strict conformity with the rules of modern music in its closes, which are uniformly composed of a leading note rising to its proper resolution. This goes a long way towards proving that our modern tonality was natural and spontaneous among our ancestors, although strictly excluded from the music of the Church, and ignored by all the theoretical writers on harmony for three centuries after that date.'*

This soil or land music became the later folk-music, and we have only to become acquainted with the rude beauty and warm sentiment of some of the oldest folk-songs, to gauge the attractive nature of

* 'History of Music' (Naumann-Ouseley), vol. i., p. 555.

the early English secular music, and to account for its hold upon the people.

That practically all the secular music of England prior to the thirteenth century should be lost is greatly to be deplored, yet with the elegiac grace and beauty of that splendid remaining example—‘*Sumer is icumen in*’—before us, it goes far to persuade us that this unrestrained, natural art of the people was characterized by a flavour and character that must have made it particularly attractive and enjoyable.

It is easy to understand how so little is known concerning the early secular music. The only learned people were the monks and religious teachers, and they devoted their attention mainly to sacred music—especially such as could be sung in churches. Sometimes, perhaps, weary with the everlasting plain-song, a venturesome spirit might hazard an original setting of a *canto fermo* to harmony ; but the Gregorian tunes were ill adapted to harmonical treatment, and the result could only have been music in parts, with most stilted harmony.

The popular music—the secular art—was not so restricted. Those who could write, and who understood musical notation, had no restrictions in the invention of tunes and ballad airs, and there is no doubt that most of what they wrote was composed in those natural major and minor modes which we use to-day. Such popular music as was written down, however, must have been ill-proportioned indeed to that

which was carried along by the ears of the people. Yet scarcely a vestige of all this has escaped the untoward conditions of age after age. Unfavoured by the clergy, secular music would not be protected by them. As all books and MSS. found their way eventually to the monasteries and religious houses, it is pretty certain that not a little secular music was confiscated in these establishments. Unfortunately, however, there was mischief beyond clerical resistance, scarcity of copyists, transcript-makers, etc. Before long there came the dissolution of the monasteries—with all the devastating processes and losses to literature and art which followed—when musical MSS. and books, whether sacred or secular, were dispersed, destroyed, or lost. In this way England lost untold musical material—creative, didactic, and historic, which it is hopeless to expect can, or will, ever be restored. We can only deplore its destruction, and admire the spirit of the Elizabethan masters which led them to repair the mischief as far as it lay in their power to do so.

When in 1437 Gutenberg gave the world his wonderful invention which was to change the face of the world, music, as well as literature, was immediately affected. Caxton set up his press at Westminster about 1471—*i.e.*, in Edward IV.'s reign (1461-1483)—not long after which time music began to be printed instead of being transcribed and duplicated with the pen.

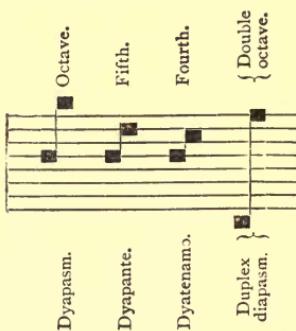
The first work printed in England having musical notation was the *Polychronicon*, written in Latin by Ralph Higden—one of our own countrymen—which, being translated by Trevisa in 1482, was subsequently printed. Apart from its printed musical example, this work is of interest from the quaint account which it contains of the discovery of the harmonic consonances by Pythagoras: ‘Here wyse men I telle that Pieagoras passed symetyme by a smythes hous and herde a swete soun and accordynge in the smytyng

of four hamers upon an anult, and therefore he lette way the hamers, and founde that one of the hamers weyed six pōnds, the seconde of twelve, the thyrde of eight, the fourth of ix. as this fygure sheweth.’ In the first English edition, printed by Caxton, a space is here left for the insertion by hand of the following noting of the consonances of the diapason.

The second English edition was printed by Wynkyn de Worde, at Westminster, in 1495, and therein the solitary musical example is printed roughly in types for the first time.



CAXTON.



Considering all things, the growth of works on music, after the invention of printing, was remarkable. It was obviously a slow process to print any books, whatever their nature ; but it is encouraging to know that by the year 1599 the number of works on music, printed in England, amounted to 250, which number had grown to 420 by the year 1650, and to 750 by 1700.

It need hardly be pointed out that a boon like printing was soon seized hold of in connection with musical works, and it is, of course, to it that we are to-day indebted for our cheap editions in music, as well as in literature generally. As Sir John Hawkins observes : ' It proved an effectual remedy for all the evils arising from the instability of musical notation ; and besides easing the public in the article of expense, it introduced such a steady and regular practice as rendered the musical an universal character.'

With the invention of printing, and the facilities thus afforded of making ideas known, the expression of views and theories respecting music seem to have followed in a perfectly natural sequence. The close of the fifteenth century is marked by several disquisitions, learned and otherwise, upon music. Thus, about 1480 was published an English translation which John Trevisa had made in 1398 of Bartholomæus' *De Proprietatibus Rerum*, written in Latin about 1366, and one of the earliest books printed in England bearing upon the art and

science of music. Another work 'Hymage or Myrrour of the Worlde,' 'emprysed and fynyssed in the xxi year of the reign of the most crysten Kyng, Kynge Edward the fourth'—i.e., in 1481—was printed by Caxton. Its twelfth chapter is headed 'After of Music,' wherein the writer shows that music is an art, because it ministers to the soul. One of the two illustrations which it contains is a man playing on a pipe. Another published work was the oldest English-printed missal—the *Missale secundum usum insignio Ecclesiae Sarum*. The manuscript was compiled for the cathedral church of Salisbury, in the eleventh century, by St. Osmund, Bishop of the diocese. The earlier missals, according to the different uses of Sarum, Hereford and York, were printed for English use at Rouen. For the musical notation necessary for these first English printed music-books various processes were employed. In some issues the notes were printed from wooden blocks; in others the stave-lines only were printed, for the notes to be added by hand; in others the stave-lines and the notes were produced by two separate printings; and early in the sixteenth century the stave-lines and notes were printed at once from musical type. This Salisbury missal was printed and published at Westminster through the Wynkyn de Worde press.

Reviewing the situation, Dunstable forms the strong link between that remarkable epoch of the

early English School—the First English School it should be called—when the *Rota*, or Round, ‘Sumer is icumen in,’ was composed by one of its disciples, and that later period early in the sixteenth century when musicians like Fairfax, and Cornyshe, begin to appear to form the Fourth English Period School. Between these come the Third English School, with such names as Hamboys, Saintwix and Abyngdon, of whom and their compositions so little is unhappily known.

How music fared during the 150 years which separate that famous composition (1250) and Dunstable (1400) is a mystery. No names have come down to us, and history is silent upon the point. It can only be surmised that, amid the stormy, troublous times music ‘went to the dogs,’ and that there was no time and no disposition to follow it up; or there was every prospect of such a small band, as these musicians were, being stamped out, or that they would die naturally without successors. The times were ill suited to sustained regulated study such as the art of composition demanded, and only here and there could be found a patron willing to lend an ear to constructional music, or to open his purse to the man who made it. Church music would be going on as usual, yet only to the extent that the Roman service needed it in the Mass and other portions of the ritual. This, too, would be restricted to the Gregorian system, probably, for the age of service

and anthem music was not yet. Unwritten secular music—music of the people—would seem to be all that the country had for years prior to the time of Dunstable; yet varied and plentiful as such music was, it was necessarily transitional, and no attempt appears to have been made to put it upon parchment, or otherwise to record it. The extent to which it served musical progress was consequently but little, if we except the bearing it had in keeping people interested in music until those better days when it was to become a scientific art.

As an instance of the fitful conditions surrounding music in its early stages in England, and as some evidence bearing upon its seemingly slow development in a country where it had attained to such excellence as early as the thirteenth century, it is only necessary to watch the course of events when Dunstable died. This took place just as the Wars of the Roses broke out—when civil war ran rife here for thirty years. After Dunstable we hear little more of the English musician for half a century and more, until Christopher Tye was born. Here and there a sovereign, Edward IV. to wit, encouraged music; but the creative musician was sadly missing. Not only was the musician silenced, but when, in course of time, his voice was heard again, it was of a much less exalted quality. Dunstable—reputed as excellent a musician as his contemporary, Dufay—was far superior to the native composers of the

early sixteenth century. Both in the generation before and after Dunstable, therefore, the excellence of the thirteenth-century music was far from maintained.

It will be noted, however, that we do not need to wait until the Elizabethan period—that Augustan age of music in this country—before realizing that England possessed at odd intervals notabilities in music second to none, and often surpassing, those of other European countries. Nor is there the slightest room for doubt respecting our pre-eminence and supremacy in musical art during the early period which we have been considering. England led the way with a school of music and musicians—a school reflecting the true British style of harmony and melody—before any other country possessed a corresponding institution. This early English School fluctuated both in its measure of excellence and succession of masters, but this was due solely to the disturbed conditions of the times. The English musical spirit was always there, and could not be exterminated, whatever happened. No other country possessed so much dormant, slumbering musical vitality, even when national matters here were at their worst. Yet all that we have had has been ignored by foreign, as well as by several English, musical historians !

Here we must break our story—one which is perchance a long one, yet the gradual recounting of

which will not, it is hoped, have been wearying to the reader. It must be allowed that the period of English musical history which this volume covers is not the most interesting one; but we hope to make amends for this in the next volume. Though so much ground has been covered, much of it has proved barren and sterile from sheer force of political influences, which were bound to operate in the making of the country and its people. Some of these processes were particularly unfavourable to music, yet they had to go on. In some of these fitful years music is seldom traceable, so that a connected story respecting it becomes almost impossible. Then, when the art or one of its workers is descried, the glimpse is so slight as to be almost past recording. Nevertheless, we have seen enough to convince us of the sure and solid foundation upon which English musical art is based—a basis which easily disposes of that oft-put query as to whether there is, or ever was, a national English musical school or style. We may rest contentedly enough about this point from the evidence already before us. Much more relating to English musical lineage is to follow, and when the whole story has been told, it will be found that no country—neither France, Germany, nor Italy—has so ancient an origin in music, or a more glorious record than has England. In its far-off days England was really a more distinctive musical nation than any other, and more musically characteristic than it is to-day.

We have seen what this country was doing musically while the England of to-day was being formed fourteen and fifteen centuries back ; we have watched the rise of musical notation and the invention of materials for expressing music, and have noted how greedily our ancestors seized hold of these, and with quill and parchment left us splendid proofs of a pure First Period School ; our libraries have a few treatises and manuscripts which place this country in the front rank for her musical disputationists and writers upon the theoretical and speculative aspects of music ; secular music and that greater art, sacred harmony, have blossomed and grown under our eyes ; musical establishments and systems existing to-day have been founded and put upon workable footings—all this we have seen take place in this country of ours prior to the rise of the Tudors, before the close of the fifteenth century.

Yet with all this our story may be said to have hardly begun. We have, as it were, only just entered upon the threshold of our subject. Hitherto the times have been stormy and the soil comparatively unfavourable. The most interesting part of our narrative has yet to be told. Minstrelsy can scarcely be left until we have shown how music was long recognised by provincial cities and boroughs as a proper subject on which money should be spent. The records of such corporations as Lincoln, Leicester,

etc., abound in interesting details of the encouragement of music and of the retaining of civic minstrels at regular salaries.

With Henry VII.'s reign a vast force of musical energy bursts forth—England rises to her fullest musical strength, and native musicians whose names will ever adorn an age particularly dear to Englishmen follow one another with great frequency. We have a glorious period before us in the Elizabethan age, when musicians rose up who were as great in their way as were Shakespeare, Bacon, Halley and Frobisher in theirs. And what shall we say of the Victorian era! We must never forget the men, however, who shared in the struggles of England's first musical supremacy—the men who made the First, Second and Third English Schools of Music.

PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES.

'History of the Modern Music of Western Europe'	}	Kiesewetter.
'History of Music'	-	Naumann-Ouseley.
'History of Music'	-	Burney.
'Survey of London'	-	Stowe.
'Dictionary of Music and Musicians'	-	Grove.
'Chronicle'	-	Holinshed.
'Biographical Dictionary of Musicians'	-	Brown.
'History of Music'	-	Stafford.
'English Songs'	-	Ritson.
'Social England'	-	Cassell.
'Popular Music of the Olden Time'	-	Chappell.
'The Organ: Its History and Construction'	-	Hopkins-Rimbault.
<i>The Musical Times</i>	-	Novello.

INDEX.

A.

AARON, Abbot of St. Martin's at Cologne, 171
 Abelard, 187
 Abingdon Abbey, 127
 Abingdon, Henry, 348, 350, 381
 Aboriginal British music 3
 Accompaniments in religious services, Orchestral, 29
 Adam de Orleton, Bishop, 341
 Adelphius, Bishop of Caerleon-on-Usk, 43
 Adrian, 125
 Aedd Mawr, 8
 Aelfheah, 128
 Aelfric, 170
 Ella, 39, 101
 Æthelred II., 150
 Æthelwold, Death of, 116; *Benediction of*, 116, 173
 Agatho, Pope, 55, 57, 136
 Age, Music in the Stone and Flint, 2
 Agincourt soldiers' music, 353
 Aidan, Bishop of the Scots, 46, 48
 Airs, Oldest Irish, Welsh, and Scottish, 27; of the Teuton races, National, 155
 Alan, 78
 Alawn, 9, 75
 Alban, St., 28
 Albion's musical life, Old, 9
 Alcuin, 62
 Aldhelm, Bishop, 115, 126-128; his famous organ, 126
 Alexander the Great, 11
 Alfred, King and minstrel, 158, 169, 173, 189; singing and harp-playing of, 160, 161; his musical example and worth, 164; connection with Oxford University, 164; fondness for the oral Anglo-Saxon poems and songs, 165
 Alfred's reign, Secular music in King, 93
 Ambrose, 43, 101
 Ambrosian Church music, 101

Amobr, 92

Amphibalus, 28
 Aneurin, 80, 83
 'Angelus ad Virginem,' MS., 283, 337; melody of, 339
 Anglo-Saxon musical methods, 56; music, 113; Church music, 135
 Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, 185
 Apollo, 56
 Aristotle, 11
 Armour, Norman, 189
Ars Cantus Mensurabilis, 208
Ars Summaria Contrapuncti, 293
 Arthur, King, 82, 162, 219
 Artificial instruments, 112
 Asser, Bishop of Sherborne, 159, 165
 Athelstan's camp, King, Music in, 163
 Augustine, 28, 32, 40, 41, 42, 46, 59, 97, 125, 137, 139, 275; the coming of, 97; safe landing of, 99
 Aulaff in King Athelstan's camp, 163
 Authors, First school of English musical, 295
 Avan Verddig, 83
Ave Maria, 338

B.

Bacon, 386
 Bagpipes, 316
 Baini, Abbé, 344
 Baldulph, 162
 Bale, 161, 166, 347
 Ballad, Anglo-Saxon, 70
 Ballad-singer, 84
 Band, Origin of the Royal, 360
 Bards and Bardism :
 Bard, 199
 Bard of the King, Harp, 72
 Bard of the Palace, 90
 Bard, Ensign, 72
 Bard, Poetic, 72
Bardd-Cadeiriawg, 90
Barda Teulu, 90
 Bardic laws, Welsh, 89

Bards and Bardism :
 Bardic Triads, 73
 Bardic usage, 81
 Bards, British, 76
 Bards, Congress of, 74
 Bards, Golden Torque, 80
 Bards, King of, 80
 Bards, King supreme of, 81
 Bards, King Vortigern's, 81
 Bards, Massacre of, 233
 Bards, Occupations of, 79
 Bartholomæus, 379
 Bass, 335
 Beatrice, wife of Richard, harper to
 Henry III., 231
 Beauchamp, Lord John, 315
 Becket, Thomas à, Chancellor of Eng-
 land, 187, 230
 Bede, 51, 56, 59, 61, 70, 75, 111, 113,
 114, 116, 136, 166
 Beli the Great, 77
 Bells, 116
Benedictional of St. Æthelwold, 116
 Benedict Biscop, 55, 56, 57, 59
 Beowulf, 49, 50
 Bertha, Queen, 100
 Binchois, 344
 Black Prince, 261
 Blegywryd, 77
 Blithe, Hanecocke de, 236
 Blondel, 217, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223 ;
 his song, 225
 Boisescue, Le Roy, 237
 Bottée de Toulmon, 205
 'Bourdons,' 314
 Bradshaw, F.S.A., Henry, 339
 Brenin Penbeirdd, 81
 Breve, 149, 284, 297
 Brigantia, 7
 British, Music among the early, 17 ;
 musical customs of the, 17 ; music
 at the funerals of the, 20 ; music, style
 of, 22 ; music, character of, 22 ; music
 before the Saxon invasion, 27 ; musical
 character of the, 35 ; first music
 of the early, 36, 37 ; musical concerts,
 64
 Britons, Vocal music of the ancient, 12,
 16 ; music among the ancient, 16 ;
 method or system among the, 21
 Bronze Period, 6
 Brutus, King, 9
 Buccina, 12
 Buccinator, A Roman, 14
 Bugle-horn, 92
 Bull, Dr., 370
 Burney, Dr., 45, 66, 94, 152, 178, 182,
 205, 207, 276, 285-289, 292, 293, 295,
 296, 299, 300, 302, 325, 336, 338, 345,
 348, 354, 357
 'By Chance it Was,' 273

C.
Cadeir-fardd, 91
 Cadvan, King, 83, 110
 Cadwaladr, 14, 78
 Cadwallon, King, 83
 Caedmon, 50, 53, 56, 166 ; dream of, 53 ;
 musical disabilities of, 51
 Cæsar, 72, 73
 Cambridge, Earl of, 261
 Camillus, 7
 Canticle, 99
 Canticum, 112
 'Cantionum Artificialium diversi
 Generis,' 348
 Canute, King, 167 ; and music, 168 ; as
 a musician, 168
 Caractacus, 2
 Carleton, 236
 Carol, 18
 Carotick, Prince of Wales, 31
 'Carta le Roy de Minstralæ,' 247
 Cassiodorus, 126
 Casswallon, 87
 Castile and Leon, King of, 247
 Caupenny, Le Roy, 229, 237
 Câw, 80
 Caxton, 324, 372, 378, 380 ; portrait of,
 378
 Cedd, 47
 Celtic whistle, 6
 Cenwulf, 111
 Chaired Bard, 90, 91
 Champagne, Le Roy de, 237
 Champagne, Mareschal of, 229
 'Chanson de Geste,' 206
 'Chanson de Roland,' 205, 206, 211
 Chant, Early English, 29 ; singing of
 the Last Supper, 29 ; introduction
 of the Gregorian, 42 ; Gallican, 42,
 43 ; Ambrosian, 43, 44, 46, 101 ; Gre-
 gorian, 171
 Chanting, 46, 286
 Chants and melodies, Remnants of
 ancient sacrificial, 18
 Chapels Royal founded, 359
 Chappell, William, 64, 65, 244, 276,
 372
 Charlemagne, 62, 203-206
 Charles I., 179
 Charter, John of Gaunt's, 248
 Chaucer, Geoffrey, 306, 311, 317, 324-
 327, 329, 334, 336, 337, 341 ; 'Can-
 terbury Tales,' 326 ; 'Pardonner,' 327 ;
 and singing, 331 ; portrait of, 326 ;
 as a Canterbury pilgrim, 331 ; and
 minstrelsy, 333
 Children, Chapel Royal, 363
 Chilston, 303
 Chinese song in praise of the dead, 8
 Choir books, 140
 Choristers, Early Church, 102

Choron, 45
 Christ, 39, 137
 Chroma, 149
 Church, Music kept alive by the, 2; before the Conquest, ancient British, 33; music, Celtic, 56, 58; Roman services introduced, 97; chants and melodies of the Roman, 98, 111; of St. Martin, 100; instruments in the, 106; services, instruments employed in, 134
 Church music, Earliest, 18, 29; Gallican, 41, 42; influence of, 183; second epoch in, 106; the first Roman, 107, 171
 Church service music, 29, 30
 Churches, British, 32; of Great Britain to-day, 98; repairing the, 109
 Cissa, 39
 Cithara, 12
 Cithara, 106, 113
 Citole, 335
 Clairseach, Irish, 5
 Clarion, 335
 Claudia, 2
 Clemens Alexandrinus, 106
 Cloister, Music of the, 69
 Coel Godbog, 16
 Coiffi, 47
 Colet, John, 368
 Colgrin, 162
 Columba, 47, 48, 76
 Composers, Famous British, 165
 Congress music, A.D. 1100, 181
 Conquest, Music at the, 199
 Convivial music, 114
 Cornyshe, 381
 Corus, 113
 Costumes, time of Henry II., English, 230
 Cotton, John, 151, 289; MSS., 113, 115, 151, 171
 Counterpoint, 66; first steps in, 135
 Counter-tenor, 335
 Court musicians, King's, 360; musicians' emoluments, 361
 Coussemaker, 289, 291, 299, 350
 Cradle-song, 157
 Crella, 82
 Crellan, soldier-bard, 177
 Cromwell, 169
 Crotchet, Dr., 375; his 'Chanson Roland,' 213
 Crotchet, Introduction of the, 150
 Crotta, 14
 Crout, Performer on three-stringed, 95
 Crowd, 244; English, 373
 Crowder, 15
 Crowdero, 16
 Crowther, 15
 Cruit, Irish, 5

Crwth, 14, 15, 72; construction of the, 15
 Cubelyn, 77
 Cuthbert, 61
 Cymbals, 106, 112; Anglo-Saxon, 114
 Cymry, 74
 Cynewulf, 86
 Cynelyn, 88
 Cytolen, 317

D.

Dance, Ninth-century, 138
 Danes, Coming of the, 167; music under the, 169; influence upon English music, 169; sacred music under the, 171
 Data, Early musical, 115
 David, 106
 Davy, Adam, 341
 'De Arte Musica,' 151
 'De Gestis Regum Anglorum,' 70
 'De Legitimis Ordinibus Pentachordorum et Tetrachordorum,' 303
 'De Mensurabilis Musica,' 342
 'De Musica Continuâ et Discreta cum Diagrammatibus,' 291
 'De Origine et Effectu Musicae,' 296
 'De Proprietatibus Rerum,' 379
 'De Quatuor Principalibus in quibus totius Musicae Radices Consistunt,' 291
 'De Speculatione Musicae' tract, The, 285, 289
 Decani and cantoris, 29
 Demisemiquaver, 150
Deo Gratias, 357
 Deor, 85
 Descant, 66; specimens of, 67
 Devon, Earl of, 249, 254
 Devonshire, Duke of, 116
 D'Evreux, 226
 Diaconus, Paul, 144
 Diapason, 116
 Diapente, 116
 Diatessaron, 116
 Dinoth, Abbot of Bangor, 32
Dominus Vobiscum, 64
 Druids and Druidism, 7, 8
 Drum, 14, 112, 114
 Dubritius, Archbishop, 82
 Dufay, 344, 346, 382; epoch, 243
 Dugdale, 284
 Dulcimer, 106, 317, 335
 Dunstable, John, 321, 322, 342-345, 351, 380-383; MSS., 346; place of burial, 343; tomb, 343
 Dunstan, 118, 126; and the angels, 121; accused of sorcery, 121; as a composer, 121
 Dwned, 217

Dyfnwal, 9
 Dyvnwal Moclmud, Triads of, 74

E.

Ealhild, Queen, 84
 East, Music of the, 27
 Easter Hymn, 60
 Eborius, Bishop of York, 43
Ecclesiae Sarum, 380
 Edde, 59
 Edgar, King, 116, 121, 127
 Edilfrid, King of Deira, 110
 Edred, King, 170
 Edward the Confessor, 174, 226
 Edward I., 232-234, 236, 291 ; his array of minstrels, 234
 Edward II., 241, 242, 258
 Edward IV., 347, 352, 377, 382 ; music during the reign of, 359 ; portrait of, 360 ; music encouraged by, 365
 Edward V., 369
 Edward, Prince, 237
 Egbert, 62
 Egelric, Abbot of Croyland, 116
 Eidiol Gleddyfeud, 77
 Einion, 217
 Eisteddfod, Welsh, 73, 92
 Eleanor, 228
 Elizabeth, Queen of Edward IV., 366
 Elizabeth, Queen, 259, 371 ; rules and regulations for minstrels, 260
 Elizabethan period of musical history, 383
 Ella, 162
 Elphegus Calvus, 128
 Elphin, 87
 Elwin, Earl, 127
 England, and the making of music, 264 ; musical, 266 ; place of in disputative music, 267
 English, The, as a musical nation, 33 ; musical annals, early, 118 ; musical spirit, early, 383
 English music, Factors in, 71
 Ethelbert, King, 98, 99
 Ethelmer, 170
 Ethelred, Death of, 159
 Ethelwold, 170
 Eubates, 75
 Evensong, 124 ; music, 61

F.

Faidit, Anselm, 224
 Fairfax, 236, 381
 Families' musicians, Private, 367
 'Fathom the Bowl,' 274
 Fiddle, 335
 Fin Folcwalding, 50
 Fitz-Stephen, 192, 193

Flageolet, The, 316
 Flint whistle, 3
 Flute, 29, 116, 124, 197, 235
 Folk-music, 270 ; factor in, 271 ; nature of, 272 ; British, 272
 Folk-songs, 17, 272 ; traditional, 275
 Foreign influence, First, 39
 Forkel, 287
 Fornsete, John, 276
 Franchinus (Gafurius), 152, 342, 345
 Franco, 57, 69, 141-150, 283, 284, 287, 288, 290, 298, 303, 305 ; notation of, 144 ; and the measuring of music, 148 ; tract, a commentary on, 298
 Frobisher, 386
 Fulgentius Episc. Anglorum, Bishop, 151
 Funeral song, 20, 22

G.

Gabbert, 9
 Gafurius or Gafforius, 152, 342, 345
 Galfridus Citharædus, 217
 Gallican chant, 137
 Gaucelm, 224
 Gebertus, 151
 'Gemma Ecclesiastica,' 63
 Gemmain, 48
 Geoffrey, 236
 George II., 226
 Geraint ab Erbin, 82
 Geraint, harper to King Alfred, 167
 Germanus, Bishop, 41
 Germany, Great tone poets of, 290
 Gervase, 311
 Gigue, Thirteenth-century, 316, 317
 Gildas, 31, 64
 Giraldus Cambrensis, 63, 64, 66, 70
 Glastonbury, Squabble at, 176
 'Glee,' Origin of the word, 94
 Glee-beam, 85
 Gleeman, 50, 84, 95
 Glewlwyd Gavaelvawr, 82
 'Gloria in Excelsis,' 243
 Godbebog, Helen, 16
 Goldeburgh, 173
 Gower, John, 317, 324
 Gregory, Pope, 41, 62, 98, 100, 102, 108, 139, 171, 176
 Gregorian music, 58-98, 105-134, 141, 320-376 ; method of the, 42 ; tones, the eight, 104 ; era of the, 106 ; chant, 107 ; music, spread of, 108
 Grimbald the monk, 159
 Grimmshawe, Adam de, 236
 Grosseteste, 306, 307
 Gryffydd ab Cynan, Prince, 177, 180
 Gryme the fisher, 173
 Guido d'Arezzo, 21, 57, 69, 141, 144, 150-152, 283, 284, 289, 293, 303 ; method

of lines, notes, and spaces, 141, 144; on his system, 145; portrait of, 146; letter notation, with deciphering, 287

Guidonian or harmonic hand, 156

Guillaume 'sans manière,' 236

Guitar, 193, 317

Gunhilda, 169, 170, 173

Gutenberg, 377

Guthrum, 173

'Gwenllian's Repose,' Harmony of, 19

Gwenllian, Princess, 18

Gwrgan Varvdrwch, 76

Gwrhri, 81

Gwron, 9, 75

Gwyddon Guabebon, 76

Gwythelin, 76

H.

Haberl, Dr., 346

Haleford, Richard de, 236

Halley, 386

Halliday, Walter, 366

Hamboys, John, 347, 350, 381

Handlo, Robert, 298, 299

Hanelock, the Dane, 173

Hardicanute, 169, 173

Harmonical proportions, 285

Harmonic hand system, 151

Harmonics, 285

Harmonists, Spontaneous, 153

Harmony, 268; early addiction of the Welsh and British to, 15; of 'Gwenllian's Repose,' 19; in Wales, 21; pure British, 30; vocal and instrumental, 33; symphonious, 65; Christianity and the development of, 269; first adoption of, 269; (vocal), in Chaucer's day, 337

Harold, 174, 203

Harp, The, 12, 14, 16, 20, 22, 50, 51, 63, 81, 96, 106, 113, 119, 120, 124, 166, 341; most ancient form of Irish, 5; triangular Saxon, 42; imperial performers on the, 82; of the ninth century, 93; mode of playing in King Alfred's time, 94; the triangular, 112; Aeolian, 121; fifteen-stringed, 227

Harp-lute, 113

Harp-music, Chorus, 235

Harper, 199

Harper and singer, British, 21

Harper-singers, Some, 236

Harpers, Anglo-Saxons as, 116

Hautboy, 335

Hawkins, Sir John, 66, 276, 338, 379

Heart music, 193

Heber, 5

Hengest, 50, 162

Henry I., 185; portrait of, 185; coro- nation of, 185; social music in the reign of, 187

Henry II., 193, 217, 229, 230

Henry III., 216, 231, 284; minstrel patronage of, 231

Henry V., 358; portrait of, 352; and music, 352

Henry VI., 244; music during the reign of, 358; portrait of, 358

Henry VII., 273, 386

Henry VIII., 342

Henry d'Avranches, 232

Henry of Huntingdon, 162, 184

Henry the Versifier, Master, 232

Heorrenda, 85

Herbert, 341

Hercules II., Duke of Modena, 346

Heremon, 5

Hertford, Earl of, 261

Higden, Ralph, 378

Hilary, 46

Hilda, Abbess, 51

Hildeburh, 50

Hnaef, 50

'Hoblate, The,' 310

Holinshed, 176, 347

Horn, 6, 14, 316, 335

Hotby, John, 350, 351; MS., 351

Howard, Lady, 367

Howard, Lord, 367

Howel, 75, 90

Howel Dha, 89

Hrothgar, 50

Hû, 76

Hugh de Dutton, 227

'Hunt is Up, The,' 335

Hunting-horn, 115

Hunting with hound and horn, 320

Hyde Abbey, 116

'Hymage or Myrrour of the Worlde,' 380

Hymn of St. John, 145

Hymns of the Anglo-Saxon Church, Latin, 172

I.

Iberio-musical proofs, 6

Idris, 13

Incantation, Cunobeline's, 88

Ingulphe, 162

Inns of Court music, 335

Instinct, National musical, 37

Instrument, Angel performing on a stringed, 152; playing among the Anglo-Saxons, 165

Instrumental music, 16

Instruments, Artificial, 112; early English, 308; secular musical, 317

Ireland, Songs and music of, 48

Irish, Musical notation of the, 21

J.

Jacob, 296
 Jongleur, Last state of the, 216
 Johannes Scholasticus, 151
 John, 57, 236
 John, Friar, 159; Praelector-Professor of Music, 164
 John of Gaunt, 246, 247, 285; charter of, 248
 John of Salisbury, 187, 188
 John, King of France, 204
 John de Dutton, 228
 John de Salopia, 236
 John (or Thomas) of Tewkesbury, 297, 298
 John of Whethamstede, 343
 Joseph of Arimathea, St., 28
 Julius Cæsar, 8, 26

K.

Kiesewetter, 287, 288, 343
 'King's Note,' or Chant Royal, 331
 Klay, 246
 Kyrie, 119

L.

Lacy, John de, 228
 Lambyn Clay, 236
 Lancaster, Earl of, 241
 Lancaster, Duke of, 247, 249, 261
 Langland, 341
 Laodicean Council, 29
 Large, 149
 Launfel, 245
Laus Perennis, 55
 Lawrence, 236
 Leah, 296
Leges Wallicæ, 89
 Le Grand, 201
 Leofric, 226
 Leopold of Austria, Duke, 219, 220
L'Homme Arme, 205
Liber de Antiquis Legibus, 373
 Linos, Greek, 7
 Linus, 2
 Litany, 99
 Liturgy, Roman, 58
 Llywarch Hen, Prince, 81, 82
 Long, 149
 Louis VII., 230
 Loup, Duke of Champagne, 14
 Ludd, 7
 Luke de Barre, 186
 Lupus, Bishop, 41
 Lute, 113, 335; thirteenth-century, 247
 Lute-player, 244
 Luyddawne, Helen, 16
 Lyndsey, William, 367

Lyre, 4, 12, 20, 86, 106, 112
 Lyres and cithars, Roman, 12, 13

M.

Madden, Sir Frederick, 276
 Maelgwn Gwynedd, 87
 Maelgwn, King, 87
 Maglocune, 47
 Maneros, Egyptian, 8
 Manogan, Emperor, 77
 Mapon, 7
 Marchis, Le Roy, 237
 Margaret, 228
 Marguerite, Countess of Hennegau, 221
 Martini, Padre, 152
 Matilda, Queen, 186
 Matins, 124
 Matthew, 236
 Maud, Empress, 189
 Meirion, 14
 Melody, 268, 286; plain-song, 66; Russian soldier's, 155
 Melody and harmony, The earliest, 2
 Melynek, John, 369
 Mensural music, England and, 287
 Merlin, 236
 Minim, 149, 150
 Minstrel control, Legislative, 258
 Minstrels, The, 197; Alfred's Court and, 167; definition of, 201; the Norman, 201, 214; wit, 215; privileges of, 226; at important weddings, 228; employments for, 228; kings of the, 229; engaged at the marriage of Margaret, 230; Edward I. saved by a minstrel, 233; payments of, 236; dress, 241; pillar, 245; king of the, 247, 248; John of Gaunt's charter to the, 248; of honour, 259; obligation to, 263; of the fifteenth century, 361, 365; the last of the, 370; Bull's epitaph on, 370
 Minstrelsy, 196; the Norman element, 191; Norman, 198; effect of, 216; book of, 217; decline of, 255; causes of decline of, 257; survivals of, 261; Edward IV. and, 366
 'Miserere,' The, 59
Missa Rex Splendens, 122
Missale secundum usum insignis, 380
 Modes, Ambrose's 'Authentic,' 43; ecclesiastical, 102; Gregory's 'Plagal,' 102; 'Authentic,' 102; Church, 103
 Monachus, Joannes, 165
 Monks, Musical tastes of the, 124
 More, Sir Thomas, 349, 350
 Morley, 299, 300, 342, 345
 Muris, John de, 292-294, 350; and the time-table, 292; his writings, 293
 'Mus. Bac.', First Cambridge, 349
 'Mus. Doc.', First English, 347

Music, Uses for, 18 ; and ritual at ceremonials, 31 ; our national, 36 ; species of, 38 ; ecclesiastical, 41, 42 ; master, in the North, 58 ; our earliest, 68 ; notation of, 69 ; decay of original British, 83 ; a priceless gift of, 139 ; domestic, 157 ; advent of scientific, 261 ; aim and end of all, 268 ; formulating, 321

Music writers and theorists, First, 69

'*Musica Guidonis Monachi*', 296

'*Musica Pratica*', 56

'*Musica Speculativa*', 294

'*Musica Theoretica*', 56

Musical exercise, 13

Musical houses, Monastic, 110

Musical methods, Fourteenth-century, 341

Musicians, The, 371

'Musike, Of the Cordis of,' 300

'Mwynen Gwynedd,' 77

N.

Nablium, 112

Nabulum, The, 113

Naumann, 288

Neolithic Period, 10

Nero, 188

Neume notation characters invented by St. Ephraim, 141

Neume notation of Guido of Arezzo, 142 ; of the tenth century, 142 ; of the eleventh century, 142 ; of the latest period, deciphered, 142

Nicholas, Abbot, 175

Nicholas, 330, 337

Norman music material, 191 ; music, influence of the, 214

Normans, English music under the, 177

Northfolke, 236

Notation, Musical, 69 ; invention of, 141, 283 ; ancient Welsh, 181

Notes and rests, 149

O.

Ockenheim, 344

Odin, or Odyn, 84, 88, 98

Odington, 284-289, 291, 307 ; MS., 285 ; notes or characters used during the time of, 286

Odo, Bishop, 174

Oydd, 7

Olave, King of the Danes, 163

'Orddigan Hün Gwenllian,' 19

Ordericus Vitalis, 184

Organ, The, 335 ; Anglo-Saxon, 112 ; early, keys of, 112 ; primitive hydraulic, 120 ; introduction into England, 123, 124 ; keyboard, 125 ; first

use of in England, 125 ; fourth century, pneumatic, 125 ; difficulty in learning the art of playing, 125 ; art of playing brought to England, 126 ; Ramsay Convent, 127 ; workers, English, 127 ; Abingdon Abbey, 127 ; Winchester Cathedral, 128 ; Bede's description of an, 128 ; character of first English, 128 ; poem on Wulfstan's Winchester, 129 ; method of blowing, 129 ; method of playing Wulfstan's Winchester, 130 ; influence of the, 133 ; ancient English Church, 133 ; burning of Canterbury Cathedral, 311 ; of Ely Cathedral, bill for repairing the, 312 ; Westminster Abbey, 313

Organistrum, 154

Organists, The first, 125

Organ-pipes, Proportions of, 285

Organs, feature of Anglo-Saxon, 126 ; representations of early English, 132 ; portative or portable, 310 ; loaning of, 313 ; bellows in early English, 314

Oriental musical influence, 4

Origen, 28

Oron, 64

O Rosa Bella, 342

Orpheus, 20

Osburga, 159

Osmund, St., Bishop of Salisbury, 380

Oswald, King, 48

Ouseley, Sir Frederick A. Gore, 21, 26, 153, 288, 375

Owain Cyveillio, Prince, 90

Owain Gwynedd, Prince, 90

Owain, Prince of Reged, 82

Oxford, Founding of the Chair of Music at, 165

P.

Pagan theatrical music, 101

'Painful (Faithful) Plough,' 274

Paris, Matthew, 314

Parker, Archbishop, 285

Part-music, 68

Part-singing in Wales, Early, 63

Patrick, St., 31, 32, 47

Paul, Diaconus, 144

Paul, St., 2

Paul the Deacon, 58

Paulinus, 48

Paulmy, Marquis de, 207

Pavement, Origin of musical, 20

Pencerdd, 91, 92

Pencerdd Gwlad, 92

Pennola, 113

Pepusch, Dr., 299

Percy, Bishop, 262

Peter the Hermit's Crusade, 185

Pipe, 4 ; the shepherd's, 335
 Pits, 347
 Plainsong, 312
 Plantagenets and music, 264
 Plectra, 115
 Plectrum, 94, 317
 Plennyd, 9, 64
Polychronicon, 378
 Polyphony, or part-writing, 265
 Poveret, 229
 Power, Lionel, 300, 302, 303 ; his treatise, 301 ; his musical characters, 302
'Practica Cantus Mensurabilis', 293
 Prick-song, 66
 Primitive institutional bards, 9
 Printed music-books, First, 379
 Printing and music, 377
 Prolation, 304
 Prydain, 8
 Psalm, 99, 171
 Psalter, Latin-Saxon, 113 ; Utrecht, 125 ; Kentish, 171
 Psalterium, 113
 Psaltery, 106, 112, 317 ; triangular, 112 ; David performing on a, 113 ; performer on a square, 114 ; performer on a circular, 229 ; performer on a fourteenth-century, 337
 Purcell, 114
 Pythagoras, 378
 Pytheas, 11, 12

Q.

Quaver, 150
'Quen of euene for ye blisse', 340
'Quid est Proportio', 351

R.

Rachel, 296
 Randal, Earl, 227
 Rahere, 186
 Ravenscroft, 342, 345
'Reading Rota', 338
 Regals, 309
 Reginald 'le menteur,' 236
'Regule cum Maximo Magistri Franconis, cum additionibus aliorum musicorum, compilata à Robert de Handlo', 298
'Regule Magistri Johan Torksey', 297
'Regule Magistri Thomae Watsingham', 299
'Regule super Proportionem', 351
 Remi, Bishop of Lincoln, 174
 Restitutus, Bishop of London, 43
 Rhys ab Griffith, Prince, 18
 Ribible, 335
 Richard I., 217, 218 ; and Blondel, 217, 226 ; love-song, 221 ; song of complaint, 223
 Richard II., 247, 248
 Richard III., Music during the reign of, 369
 Richard, 236
 Richard de Haleford, 236
 Richard, harper to Henry III., 231
 Richard, Prince, 260
 Richard, Duke of York, 369
 Ritson, 200
 Robert, 185
 Robert of Brunne, 173
 Robert de Colecestria, 236
 Robert de Lacy, 227
 Robert de Scardeburgh, 236
 Roland, 203, 204 ; song of, 205-207 ; military song on the French Champion, 207
 Rollo the Ranger, 199, 202
 Roman influence, 12 ; music, 58
 Rote, 335
 Rufus, 185 ; music under, 183

S.

Sackbut, 335
 Sacred music, 58 ; earliest, 28 ; resources, early, 32 ; teaching, 43 ; in services, 110 ; in the hands of the clergy, 139
 Saintwix, Thomas, 347, 350, 381
 Saladin, 218
Sambuca-Canticum, 115
 Saxon, Musical art of the, 37, 41 ; glee hall, 49 ; musical instruments of the, 53, 111 ; part-singing, 63 ; music, decline of, 95 ; period, musical progress during the, 110 ; musical influence, late, 155
 Scald, 199
 Scalds, Saxon, 83 ; Danish, 162
 Scales, 'Plagal,' 102 ; the Greek, 285
 School, First musical training, 61 ; first English, for teaching the art of music, 164 ; of third English music, 381
 School of English Music, Earliest days of the, 338 ; founder of the second, 342 ; second period of the, 345 ; third period of the, 350 ; fourth period, 381
 Scientific musical system, Our, 22
 Scop, 96, 199 ; success of the, 85 ; Deor, 'the Lament' of, 85 ; songs and music of the, 87
'Scriptorum de Musicā Medii Aevi', 299
 Secular music, 110 ; English, 376
 Semibreve, 149, 150, 284
 Semichroma, 149
 Semiminim, 149

Service of Perpetual Praise, 55
 Service of Prayer and Praise, 40
 Shakespeare, 324, 386
 Shalm, 335
 Sheale, Richard, 370
 Singing: in the Church, 62; at Milan Cathedral, 44; the Angles in, 65; Norman influence upon, 175
 Smith, John Stafford, 357, 373
 Sol-fa system, Originator of the, 144
 Solmization, 283
 Song: of the soil, 17; bardic, 48; German peasant, 155; Saxon popular, 173; of Roland, 204; Master of the, 348; of Agincourt, 354, 358; of a prisoner, 373
 'Speculum Musicae,' 294
 Speed, 162
 Spelman, Sir John, 161
 Squire, Barclay, 346
 Stapylton, Nicholas, 367
 Stephen, King, 184-189; music under, 189; portrait of, 190; spread of Church music under, 190; Church services at the time of, 192
 Stone Age, 10
 Stonehenge, Druids' temple, 74
 Stowe, 242, 343
 Style and manner, Moulding the musical, 136
 Suffolk, Earl of, 261
 'Sumer is icumen in,' 276-282, 322, 336, 338, 358, 373, 375, 381
 'Summum Artis Musices,' 348
 System, Ecclesiastical music, 31
 System, Gregory's, 62

T.

Tabor, 244
 Tacitus, 73
 Tailifer, 203-205, 210
 Talhairn Tad Awen, 82
 Taliesin, 40, 82, 87-89
 Tallis, 297
Te Deum, Ambrosian, 44
 Teilaw, Bishop of Llandaff, 81
 Temple, Musical system of the, 106
 Tenor, 152, 153, 335; clef, in Church music, 153
 Tertullian, 28
 Theinred, Ælred, 303
 Theobald, Archbishop, 187
 Theodore, 125
 'Theoremata Musica Versibus Explícata,' 294
 Theorists, First English, 303
 Theory, Early writers on musical, 22; musical grammar and, 319
 Thomas of Kingsbury, Master, 298
 Thor, 39, 46

Thurstan, Abbot, 176
 Time characters, 283, 292, 298, 305
 Time, musical, 304
 Time-table, Invention of the, 150
 Tinctor, 205
 Tinctoris, Johannes, 344
 Tiw, 39
 Tone and cadence, Sacred, 47
 Tone, Gregorian, 135, 175
 Tone-painting, Colour and, 323
 Tonic or key-note, 144
 Torksey, John, 291, 295, 297, 298, 307
 Torraine, Duke of, 241
 'Tractatus de Musica,' 394
 Treble, 335
 Trevisa, John, 378, 379
 Trokelowe, 241
 Trumpet, 115, 316, 335
 Trumpeter, A Roman, 13
 Tuba, 12
 Tune: of the Church, 66; old English dance, 373
 Tunes, Oldest Welsh, 26; first British, 35; of Scotland and Ireland, 36
 Tunes, Traditional, 22
 Tunstead, Simon, 291
 Turketal, 170
 Turner, Sharon, 234
 Turol, 204
 Turpin, Archbishop, 205
 Tubury, custom, A, 246; election, 253
 Tydain, 76
 Tye, Christopher, 382

U.

Ugnach, 89
 'Unbeniaerth Prydain,' 91
 Urien, 87
 Uther, 40

V.

Venantius Fortunatus, 14
 Vieille, Jongleur playing a, 353
 Viol, 112, 113, 197, 317; the treble, 244
 Violin, 114
 Virgin Mary, 337
 'Vision of Piers Plowman,' 341
 Vitalian I., Pope, 125
 Vitigas the Goth, King, 126
 Vocal music, 29; natural, 68
 Voice, Human, 112
 Vortigern, Prince, 81

W.

Wace, 9, 206
 'Waits,' Music of the, 197; and carol-singers, modern, 197
 Walsingham, Thomas, 149, 297, 299, 300, 307; his writings, 299
 Wandering musicians of France and Germany, 316

Wanley, 276
 Warkworth, Hermit of, 262
 Warwick, Earl of, 261
 Wastell, William, 368
 Wayte, 335
 Wearmouth and Jarrow, Bishop, 56
 Weaver, 343
 Welsh melodies, 17; records, the earliest, 21; music, 26; as musicians, 27
 Werintone, Adam de, 236
 Werstan, Bishop of Sherborne, 164
 Wheatacre, Richard, 236
 Whethamstede, Abbot, 315; organ presented by, 315
 William I., 174, 183, 198, 202, 203, 212, 216; picture of, 175; at church, 175
 William of Fescamp, 176
 William of Malmesbury, 70, 127, 162, 175, 183, 186
 William of Norhall, 64
 William of Wykeham, 336
 Winchelcomb Church, Opening of, 111
 Winchester, 165; Cathedral, and musical growth of the country, 184
 Woden, 39, 46
 Wulfstan, 128, 129, 134
 Wydewe, Robert, 351
 Wylde, John, 296
 Wynkyn de Worde, 378

Y.

'Y Brython' (*The Britons*), 23
 'Ymdawi ad y Brenhin' (*The Departure of the King*), 78
 'Yr Hên Erddigian' (*The Ancient Harmony*), 24

Z.

Zithern, 317

THE END.

MUSICAL BOOKS BY F. J. CROWEST.

THE GREAT TONE POETS.

EIGHTH EDITION.

'The subjects are well chosen; the memoirs bristle with piquant anecdotes. From Bach to Schumann he keeps our admiration at fever heat.'—*Academy.*

ADVICE TO SINGERS.

TWELFTH THOUSAND.

'Mr. Crowest is an accepted authority on the voice and voice production, and even the most cursory examination of these pages confirms that opinion.'—*Court Circular.*

'I cannot do better, I think, than draw this to a conclusion by quoting a great authority on the voice—namely, Mr. Frederick J. Crowest.'—*The Lady.*

CHERUBINI. 'Great Musicians' Series.

'Mr. Crowest has made musical biography his study, and his "Great Tone Poets" is one of the most popular books of its kind. He treats his present subject with care and judgment, and neither his statements nor his opinions are likely to be found fault with.'—*Globe.*

MUSICAL HISTORY AND BIOGRAPHY.

'An excellent little book—contains an immense amount of information, historical, biographical, and critical, in a very small compass.'—*Musical Education.*

A BOOK OF MUSICAL ANECDOTE.

TWO VOLS.

'Mr. Crowest's volumes are readable and amusing. There is this difference in his books from previous publications, that he accompanies the anecdotes with a running commentary.'—*Athenæum.*

PHASES OF MUSICAL ENGLAND.

'What Mr. Crowest says of the acquirements necessary to a right exercise of the critical function is undoubtedly just. . . . He gives various examples in support of his charges, which we are bound to acknowledge he fully proves.'—*Saturday Review.*

MUSICAL GROUNDWORK.

'There is an excellent system throughout the book of imparting the instruction in such a way that it can be readily grasped and recollected. It is really a triumph to succeed as the writer of this little work has done, when we remember that nothing in the whole educational curriculum is more difficult to successfully convey to the student's mind, through the medium of a manual, than an all-round knowledge of the groundwork of music.'—*School Board Chronicle.*

THE DICTIONARY OF BRITISH MUSICIANS.

'We have no hesitation in saying that it is the most complete list of British musicians yet published. So far as we have been able to test the volume it is accuracy itself.'—*Musical Standard.*

WORKS ON MUSICAL SUBJECTS.

EDITED BY DR. JENSEN.

THE LIFE OF ROBERT SCHUMANN, told in his Letters.

Translated by MAY SIMPSON. 2 vols., crown 8vo., 21s.

'These volumes afford a revelation of the inner self of the composer, such as no biography (or even autobiography, if we had one) could furnish, seeing that they place before us, in all their vivid freshness and piquancy, the thoughts of Schumann written to his most intimate friends. The translation is admirably done, and these handsome volumes are a credit to translator and publisher alike!—*Musical Standard*.

EDITED BY FREDERICK SCHÖNE AND FERDINAND HILLER.

THE LETTERS OF A LEIPZIG CANTOR, MORITZ HAUPTMANN, to Franz Hauser, Ludwig Spohr, and other Musicians.

Translated and arranged by ARTHUR DUKE COLERIDGE, Author of 'Eton in the Forties,' etc. 2 vols., demy 8vo., 21s.

'Moritz Hauptmann has a special claim on the sympathies of English readers, not merely as the intimate friend of Spohr and Mendelssohn, but as the teacher of some of the most eminent native composers and musicians, amongst others the late Walter Bache, J. F. Barnett, F. H. Cowen, and Arthur Sullivan. For a quarter of a century he enjoyed the reputation of being the greatest theorist and teacher of counterpoint and harmony. Those who knew him personally learnt to appreciate his singular courtesy, independence, and moral worth, and the kindly humour of the man reveals itself in his letters.'—*Graphic*.

'Mr. Coleridge has done good service by this judicious selection of the familiar, but always critical, letters of Moritz Hauptmann, and he has translated them in a manner which brings out the charm of the original.'—*Standard*.

WORKS ON MUSICAL SUBJECTS

BY THE LATE MR. BEALE.

THE LIGHT OF OTHER DAYS: Musical Reminiscences of Half a Century.

By WILLERT BEALE (formerly of Cramer and Co.), 2 vols., demy 8vo., with portrait, 28s.

'Mr. Willert Beale has in his Reminiscences given us a greater romance of real life than will be found in twenty volumes of novels by the most eminent authors. Yet all so naturally and so simply told.'—*The Baron de Bookworms in 'Punch.'*

BY THE LATE MISS WALKER.

MY MUSICAL EXPERIENCES.

By BETTINA WALKER. With Reminiscences of Sir Sterndale Bennett, Tausig, Sgambati, Liszt, Deppe, Scharwencka, and Henselt. One vol., crown 8vo., 6s.

'A book which will delight students of the piano. They will revel in the details given of the "little ways" of various "masters" named. Miss Walker writes very frankly and ingenuously, and those who have ever engaged in the same sort of study will follow her narrative with abounding interest.'—*Globe*.

BY MR. ROWBOTHAM.

THE HISTORY OF MUSIC.

A New Edition, by J. F. ROWBOTHAM. One vol., crown 8vo., 7s. 6d.

'Mr. Rowbotham's work appears interesting, not only to all lovers of music—the most popular of the arts—but to every student of human history and progress. The book deserves to be earnestly recommended to all who care for that entrancing study—the study of human evolution of man slowly opening from the bud into the blossom of civilization.'—*Daily News*.

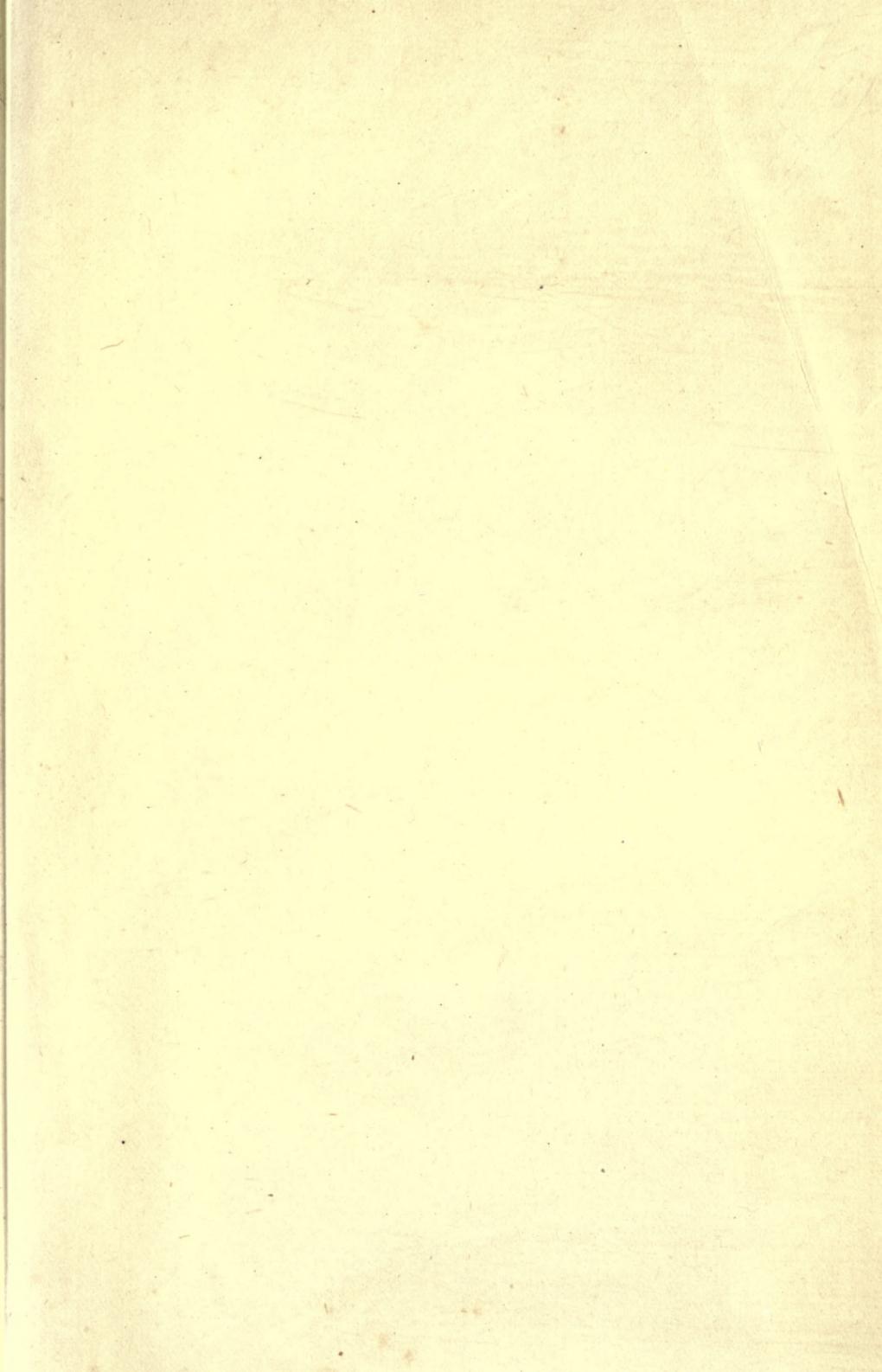
LONDON

RICHARD BENTLEY & SON, NEW BURLINGTON STREET

Publishers in Ordinary to Her Majesty the Queen

AND AT ALL LIBRARIES AND BOOKSELLERS'.







PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

ML
285
C76

Crowest, Frederick James
The story of British
music

Music

